

LƯU HOÀNG TRÍ

BÀI TẬP

7  
PEARSON

# Tiếng Anh

Không đáp án



NHÀ XUẤT BẢN  
ĐẠI HỌC SƯ PHẠM TP HỒ CHÍ MINH

**LƯU HOÀNG TRÍ**

*(Giáo viên chuyên Anh – Trường THPT Nguyễn Thượng Hiền – TP. HCM)*

# **BÀI TẬP**

# **TIẾNG ANH 7**

**(KHÔNG ĐÁP ÁN)**

**THEO CHƯƠNG TRÌNH MỚI CỦA BỘ GIÁO DỤC**



**NHÀ XUẤT BẢN**

**ĐẠI HỌC SƯ PHẠM THÀNH PHỐ HỒ CHÍ MINH**

# Lời nói đầu

*Các em học sinh thân mến!*

Chúng tôi biên soạn “**Bài tập Tiếng Anh 7 – Không đáp án**” dùng kèm với “**Tiếng Anh 7**” của Nhà xuất bản Giáo dục Việt Nam với sự hợp tác của Tập đoàn Xuất bản Giáo dục Pearson, và dành cho học sinh lớp 7 đã học qua Tiếng Anh 3, Tiếng Anh 4, và Tiếng Anh 5 ở bậc Tiểu học và Tiếng Anh 6 ở bậc THCS.

Chúng tôi tập trung biên soạn các dạng bài tập nhằm phát triển năng lực giao tiếp bằng Tiếng Anh thông qua kỹ năng nói, đọc, viết, trong đó có chú ý đến tâm lý lứa tuổi của học sinh lớp 7.

Bài tập dành cho mỗi đơn vị bài học bao gồm:

- ❖ Phần A: **Phonetics** (Ngữ âm)
- ❖ Phần B: **Vocabulary & Grammar** (Từ vựng & Ngữ pháp)
- ❖ Phần C: **Speaking** (Nói)
- ❖ Phần D: **Reading** (Đọc)
- ❖ Phần E: **Writing** (Viết)
- ❖ **Test** (gồm 80 câu hỏi kiểm tra với bài tập phát triển các kỹ năng trên)

Các bài “**Test Yourself**” giúp học sinh tự kiểm tra những nội dung kiến thức, và rèn luyện các kỹ năng sau mỗi 3 đơn vị bài học.

Các bài tập trong “**Bài tập Tiếng Anh 7 – Không đáp án**” đa dạng, phong phú, bám sát từ vựng, ngữ pháp và chủ đề trong sách giáo khoa “**Tiếng Anh 7**” của Nhà xuất bản Giáo dục Việt Nam và Tập đoàn Xuất bản Giáo dục Pearson.

Chúng tôi hi vọng rằng “**Bài tập Tiếng Anh 7 – Không đáp án**” sẽ là một tài liệu tự học hữu ích cũng như một phương tiện hỗ trợ tốt cho việc rèn luyện, nâng cao trình độ Tiếng Anh cho học sinh lớp 7.

Mặc dù đã có nhiều cố gắng trong việc biên soạn, song không thể tránh khỏi thiếu sót. Chúng tôi rất mong nhận được những đóng góp quý báu của các bạn đồng nghiệp và các em học sinh để cuốn sách càng hoàn thiện hơn trong lần tái bản sau.

Xin trân trọng cảm ơn!

*Tác giả*



**A. PHONETICS**

I. Put the word into the correct column according the underlined part.

<i>again</i>	<i>camera</i>	<i>bird</i>	<i>word</i>	<i>learn</i>
<i>turn</i>	<i>girl</i>	<i>natural</i>	<i>world</i>	<i>first</i>
<i>third</i>	<i>signal</i>	<i>heard</i>	<i>yesterday</i>	<i>final</i>
<i>assistant</i>	<i>birthday</i>	<i>sir</i>	<i>neighbour</i>	<i>culture</i>

/ə/	/ɜ:/

II. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

1. A. prefer                      B. better                      C. teacher                      D. worker
2. A. bear                          B. hear                          C. dear                          D. near
3. A. collect                        B. concern                      C. concert                      D. combine
4. A. absent                        B. government                    C. dependent                    D. enjoy
5. A. future                         B. return                        C. picture                        D. culture

**B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR**

I. Match the nouns from the box with the correct verb.

<i>athletics</i>	<i>basketball</i>	<i>cycling</i>	<i>football</i>
<i>karate</i>	<i>skating</i>	<i>swimming</i>	<i>tennis</i>
<i>computer games</i>	<i>photos</i>	<i>TV</i>	<i>films</i>
<i>judo</i>	<i>cartoons</i>	<i>bottles</i>	<i>aerobics</i>
<i>stamps</i>	<i>gardening</i>	<i>camping</i>	<i>dolls</i>
<i>music videos</i>	<i>coins</i>	<i>table tennis</i>	<i>gymnastics</i>

1. go: \_\_\_\_\_
2. do: \_\_\_\_\_
3. collect: \_\_\_\_\_
4. play: \_\_\_\_\_

5. **take:** \_\_\_\_\_
6. **watch:** \_\_\_\_\_

**II. Put one of the verbs from the box in each blank with the correct form.**

<i>play</i>	<i>read</i>	<i>go</i>	<i>do</i>	<i>listen</i>	<i>collect</i>
-------------	-------------	-----------	-----------	---------------	----------------

1. The children are \_\_\_\_\_ a play at the end of term.
2. When did you start \_\_\_\_\_ antique glass?
3. What kind of music do you \_\_\_\_\_ to?
4. Irene won't be able \_\_\_\_\_ in the match on Saturday.
5. I've never \_\_\_\_\_ skiing.
6. He spent a pleasant afternoon \_\_\_\_\_ the book.

**III. Complete the sentences with the words in the box.**

<i>basketball</i>	<i>books</i>	<i>chess</i>	<i>films</i>
<i>music</i>	<i>photography</i>	<i>skating</i>	<i>swimming</i>

1. I really like \_\_\_\_\_ - especially in the sea.
2. I'm interested in \_\_\_\_\_. My favourite band is T-ara from Korea.
3. I love \_\_\_\_\_. I go to the cinema every weekend.
4. I really like \_\_\_\_\_. I don't play it, but I watch matches on TV.
5. My hobby is \_\_\_\_\_. I have a new camera.
6. I love \_\_\_\_\_. My favourite writer is To Hoai.
7. I really love \_\_\_\_\_ in the park with my friends.
8. I like \_\_\_\_\_. I play against my dad. I also play against other people on the Internet.

**IV. Put the verbs in brackets in the correct verb form.**

1. Nam's friends often (give) \_\_\_\_\_ him stamps from other countries.
2. My sister (practise) \_\_\_\_\_ the guitar twice a week.
3. I (see) \_\_\_\_\_ a film this Sunday evening. \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ go) with me?
4. They (give) \_\_\_\_\_ a party next week.
5. The members of the stamp collectors' club (meet) \_\_\_\_\_ at the library next Friday.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ be) free next Sunday?
7. We (live) \_\_\_\_\_ near Nam's house, but we (not see) \_\_\_\_\_ him very often.
8. Don't worry. I (go) \_\_\_\_\_ fishing with you next Saturday morning.

V. Write the name of the hobbies from the box into each blank according to the description.

*butterfly collection*

*growing plants*

*stamp collection*

1. \_\_\_\_\_  
At first, people preferred to collect by country. They chose one topic in their own country. Nowadays, people enjoy collecting in topics from several countries. The most favourite themes are sports, art and music, birds and flowers, etc.
2. \_\_\_\_\_  
Many people enjoy this hobby because they have a close contact with outdoors, exercise, and nature. They also gain a knowledge of insects.
3. \_\_\_\_\_  
Today this hobby becomes very popular in the world. For many people, it is a form of exercise and an enjoyable leisure activity. With a little soil, some seeds, and a few basic tools, people can enjoy creating a beautiful thing and watching it grow.

VI. Complete the text with the verbs in the box in the correct form. Maybe some verbs can be used more than once.

*go*

*play*

*watch*

*listen*

- John has a lot of hobbies. He (1) \_\_\_\_\_ chess at school and he also (2) \_\_\_\_\_ skating. After dinner, he (3) \_\_\_\_\_ for a walk and he (4) \_\_\_\_\_ to music every evening in his room. John loves sports. He (5) \_\_\_\_\_ athletics at school, and he (6) \_\_\_\_\_ football after school. On Saturdays, John and his friends (7) \_\_\_\_\_ swimming. On Sundays, they (8) \_\_\_\_\_ basketball in the park. On Sunday evenings, they sometimes (9) \_\_\_\_\_ a film.

VII. Complete the questions, using the verbs from the box in the correct form.

*do*

*go*

*listen to*

*eat*

1. \_\_\_\_\_ your father like \_\_\_\_\_ rock music?
2. \_\_\_\_\_ your parents like \_\_\_\_\_ on holiday?
3. \_\_\_\_\_ you enjoy \_\_\_\_\_ ice-cream?
4. \_\_\_\_\_ your friends hate \_\_\_\_\_ their homework?

VIII. Read Mike's profile and complete the sentences.

<b>Name:</b>	Mike
<b>Loves:</b>	(play) football; (walk) in the mountains
<b>Likes:</b>	(listen to) music
<b>Don't mind:</b>	(go to) school
<b>Don't like:</b>	(do) homework
<b>Hate:</b>	(tidy) my room

1. Mike \_\_\_\_\_ football.
2. He \_\_\_\_\_ in the mountains.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ to school.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ to music.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ his room.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ homework.

**IX. Write questions for the answers.**

1. A: Where \_\_\_\_\_ on holiday?  
B: I like going to the mountains on holiday.
2. A: Who \_\_\_\_\_ at school?  
B: I like sitting next to my friend Jack at school.
3. A: What kind \_\_\_\_\_ to?  
B: My friends like listening to rap music.
4. A: What \_\_\_\_\_ on Sunday evenings?  
B: I enjoy going to the cinema.

**C. SPEAKING**

**I. Rearrange the sentences to make a suitable conversation by writing the correct number in the box.**

- Those are posters of my favourite singers.
- Singers? They're very nice. Thank you.
- They're my favourite T-shirts.
- Hi. Tell me about your collections. What are these?
- Oh, they're interesting. And what are those?

**II. Complete the conversation.**

- A: What is your hobby?  
B: I enjoy collecting stamps.  
A: When did you start the hobby?  
B: I started my hobby when (1) \_\_\_\_\_.  
A: How can you find stamps?  
B: I (2) \_\_\_\_\_.  
A: Why do you enjoy this hobby?  
B: I (3) \_\_\_\_\_.  
How about you? What (4) \_\_\_\_\_?  
A: I don't like collecting stamps. I love (5) \_\_\_\_\_.



## D. READING

### I. Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill each blank in the following passage.

Coin collecting is one of the most popular hobbies in the world. Most coin (1)\_\_\_\_\_ enjoy trying to have a complete set of a country's coins. Some people collect coins for pleasure; (2)\_\_\_\_\_ collect coins in order to sell them later. From coins, we can also (3)\_\_\_\_\_ something about certain famous people and events in a country's (4)\_\_\_\_\_. Many beginning collector go to the bank and buy coins. Then they (5)\_\_\_\_\_ coins for their collection.

- |                  |               |              |                |
|------------------|---------------|--------------|----------------|
| 1. A. collectors | B. collecting | C. collected | D. collections |
| 2. A. another    | B. other      | C. others    | D. the other   |
| 3. A. teach      | B. learn      | C. give      | D. offer       |
| 4. A. history    | B. nature     | C. science   | D. geography   |
| 5. A. look .     | B. see        | C. watch     | D. find        |

### II. Read the article and then decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).

After school Susan goes home to do her model-making. She loves making models. She started about a year ago. She needs about two weeks to make a model. Then she puts it on the shelf in her bedroom. She has about twenty models now. She thinks she will need to get another shelf soon. Last term she tried to start a club for model-making at school but the teachers and other children weren't interested. She thinks she has a lot of fun anyway.

- |  | True                     | False                    |
|--|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Susan makes models when she stays at school.  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2. She has made her models for about one year.   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3. It takes her two weeks to make two models.  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4. She will need another shelf for her models soon.  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5. Susan tried to start a club for model making and the teachers and other children were interested in it very much. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

### III. Read the passage, and then choose the best answer.

Along with jogging and swimming, cycling is the best all-round forms of exercise. It can help to increase your strength and energy, giving you a stronger heart. You don't carry the weight of your body on your feet when cycling. It is also a good form for people with a pain in your feet or your back. You should start your hobby slowly. Doing too quickly can have bad effects.

You should cycle twice or three times a week. If you find you are in pain, you will stop and take a rest.

1. Why is cycling a good form of exercise?  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Why might people with a pain in the back go cycling?  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. What will happen if you do too quickly?  
\_\_\_\_\_

4. How often should you go cycling?

5. What will you do if you find you are in pain?

## E. WRITING

I. Use the words or phrases given to write meaningful sentences. Then, write a paragraph about your hobby or your classmate's hobby.

1. Name of the hobby:

I/ unusual hobby/ collect/ buttons.

2. When I started the hobby:

When/ I/ ten/ I/ lose/ a cute button/ shirt.

I/ have to/ find/ another/ to replace.

3. Why I like it:

Buttons/ long history.

Buttons/ be made/ different materials.

They/ various sizes/ shapes/ designs/ colours.

4. Feelings about the hobby:

Button collecting/ not expensive/ it/ useful/ many ways.

5. Future:

I/ collect/ rare buttons/ other countries.

II. Write about your book collection. Complete the gaps of the paragraph, using the cues given to you.

1. Name of your collection:
  - books
  - books about animals and plants; story books; books about school subjects
  - books about English-speaking countries
2. How you collect them:
  - buy from bookshops or second-hand book stalls
  - get from friends or family members
3. Why you collect them:
  - get information and facts
  - broaden knowledge and understanding
4. Your plan in the future:
  - make the collection larger
  - open library

**Your answer:**

My hobby is (1)\_\_\_\_\_. I collect books whenever I have money and I need some books. I collect many kinds of books such as (2)\_\_\_\_\_; story books or (3)\_\_\_\_\_. I am learning at school, you know, English, Maths, History, Geography, Biology; and books about (4)\_\_\_\_\_.

I buy books from (5)\_\_\_\_\_ near my house, and some others from (5)\_\_\_\_\_. I also get books from (6)\_\_\_\_\_.

I collect books because I would like to (7)\_\_\_\_\_ from books. They help me broaden (8)\_\_\_\_\_.

In the future, I try to make my collection (9)\_\_\_\_\_. I would like to open (10)\_\_\_\_\_ of my own.

**TEST (UNIT 1)**

**I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.**

- |                                   |                                |                              |                     |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. A. b <u>ir</u> d               | B. g <u>ir</u> l               | C. f <u>ir</u> st            | D. s <u>is</u> ter  |
| 2. A. b <u>ur</u> n               | B. s <u>un</u>                 | C. h <u>ur</u> t             | D. t <u>ur</u> n    |
| 3. A. n <u>ur</u> se              | B. p <u>ic</u> ture            | C. s <u>ur</u> f             | D. r <u>et</u> urn  |
| 4. A. n <u>ei</u> gh <u>bo</u> ur | B. f <u>av</u> our <u>i</u> te | C. c <u>u</u> lt <u>ur</u> e | D. t <u>ou</u> rist |
| 5. A. h <u>o</u> b <u>o</u> yy    | B. h <u>o</u> ur               | C. h <u>o</u> tel            | D. h <u>o</u> t     |

**II. Find which word does not belong to each group.**

- |                |              |              |                 |
|----------------|--------------|--------------|-----------------|
| 6. A. reporter | B. collector | C. gardener  | D. newspaper    |
| 7. A. stamps   | B. album     | C. collector | D. mountain     |
| 8. A. skating  | B. climbing  | C. gardening | D. horse-riding |
| 9. A. hate     | B. enjoy     | C. love      | D. like         |
| 10. A. unusual | B. favourite | C. popular   | D. common       |

**III. Choose the correct answers.**

11. There are many \_\_\_\_\_ why it is important to have a hobby.  
A. answers      B. reasons      C. details      D. facts
12. Will you \_\_\_\_\_ making models in the future?  
A. pick up      B. look for      C. take up      D. find
13. Do you think that hobby is \_\_\_\_\_ and boring?  
A. easy      B. difficult      C. danger      D. interesting
14. I love my sister's paintings because she is very \_\_\_\_\_ in using colours.  
A. careless      B. care      C. creative      D. imagine
15. A hobby helps you to connect with \_\_\_\_\_ people.  
A. other      B. others      C. another      D. the other
16. I join a photography club, and all the members love \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of beautiful photos.  
A. take      B. taking      C. make      D. making

17. What does your father do \_\_\_\_\_ his free time?  
 A. in                      B. at                      C. on                      D. while
18. I think a hobby will always give you \_\_\_\_\_ and help you \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. pleased – relax                      B. pleasure – relaxed  
 C. pleased – relaxing                      D. pleasure – relax
19. You can share your stamps \_\_\_\_\_ other collectors \_\_\_\_\_ a stamp club.  
 A. with – at                      B. to – at                      C. with – in                      D. to – in
20. I think this hobby does not cost you much, and \_\_\_\_\_ you need is time.  
 A. most                      B. all                      C. some                      D. all of
21. Nowadays people \_\_\_\_\_ hours sitting in front of computers.  
 A. take                      B. last                      C. set                      D. spend
22. I think you should take up swimming \_\_\_\_\_ it is suitable for your health condition.  
 A. so                      B. because                      C. although                      D. but
23. My family enjoys \_\_\_\_\_ because we can sell vegetables and flowers \_\_\_\_\_ money.  
 A. garden – to                      B. gardening – for                      C. gardening – with                      D. garden – of
24. If your hobby is greeting card making, you can give your \_\_\_\_\_ to your friends as presents.  
 A. hobby                      B. money                      C. greetings                      D. products
25. My sister's hobby is sewing, and she can get the sewing patterns from the \_\_\_\_\_ magazines.  
 A. fashion                      B. cooking                      C. sports                      D. science
26. My brother doesn't like ice-skating because he thinks it is \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. danger                      B. in danger                      C. dangerous                      D. endangered
27. My sister is very keen on swimming, and she goes swimming three \_\_\_\_\_ a week.  
 A. time                      B. a time                      C. times                      D. timings
28. We often read the instructions carefully in order to make \_\_\_\_\_ of the things we like best.  
 A. meanings                      B. models                      C. copies                      D. uses
29. You need to be \_\_\_\_\_ to follow eggshell carving because it may take two weeks to complete one shell.  
 A. careful                      B. interested                      C. fit                      D. patient
30. If you choose sewing as your hobby, you will \_\_\_\_\_ your own clothes.  
 A. do                      B. make                      C. take                      D. get

**IV. Fill in each blank with a suitable hobby.**

<i>jogging</i>	<i>photography</i>	<i>gardening</i>	<i>basketball</i>	<i>gymnastics</i>
<i>cycling</i>	<i>bird-watching</i>	<i>chess</i>	<i>dancing</i>	<i>ice skating</i>

31. \_\_\_\_\_: a game played by two people on a square board, in which each player has 16 pieces that can be moved on the board in different ways.
32. \_\_\_\_\_: the job or activity of working in a garden, growing and taking care of the plants, and keeping it attractive.

33. \_\_\_\_\_ : a game played by two teams of five men or six women who score points by throwing a large ball through an open net hanging from a metal ring.
34. \_\_\_\_\_ : the sport or activity of riding a bicycle.
35. \_\_\_\_\_ : the art of moving your body to music.
36. \_\_\_\_\_ : moving across ice using special shoes with a thin metal bar fixed to the bottom that you wear to move quickly on ice.
37. \_\_\_\_\_ : the activity of running at a slow regular speed, especially as a form of exercise.
38. \_\_\_\_\_ : the hobby of studying wild birds in their natural environment.
39. \_\_\_\_\_ : physical exercises and activities performed inside, often using equipment such as bars and ropes which are intended to increase the body's strength and the ability to move and bend easily.
40. \_\_\_\_\_ : the activity or job of taking photographs or films.

**V. Fill in each blank with ONE suitable word.**

41. We \_\_\_\_\_ playing table-tennis very interesting because we can meet and make friends with interesting people.
42. My brother and I \_\_\_\_\_ the same hobby.
43. I love \_\_\_\_\_ outdoors in my garden to plant flowers and vegetables.
44. My father likes \_\_\_\_\_ his bike in the park at the weekend.
45. Tom and Peter like water \_\_\_\_\_, and they go swimming, play water polo and surf together a lot.
46. My hobby is collecting \_\_\_\_\_ because I love reading whenever I have time.
47. Why don't you \_\_\_\_\_ jogging because it can help you keep fit?
48. I really enjoy going round the shops in my town to \_\_\_\_\_ for rare and old teacups.
49. My parents have just bought a new \_\_\_\_\_ of roller skates.
50. It is very \_\_\_\_\_ to collect motorcycles because it costs you a lot of money to buy them and get them repaired.

**VI. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.**

51. I enjoy (collect) \_\_\_\_\_ dolls and it becomes my pleasure.
52. We love (watch) \_\_\_\_\_ new films, and we (go) \_\_\_\_\_ to watch a new Hollywood film next weekend.
53. My brother hates (do) \_\_\_\_\_ the same things day after day.
54. Our uncle (play) \_\_\_\_\_ badminton once a week.
55. I (collect) \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of stamps from foreign countries so far.

**VII. Complete the conversation, using the words or phrases given.**

A: What is your hobby?

B: Well, I like collecting stamps.

A: How can you collect your stamps?

B: 56. \_\_\_\_\_

(I/ buy/ post office. I/ also/ ask/ members of family/ relatives)

57. \_\_\_\_\_  
(Sometimes/ I/ exchange/ stamps/ other people)
- A: How do you organize your collection?
- B: 58. \_\_\_\_\_  
(I/ divide/ different groups/ animals/ plants/ birds/ so on)
- A: Why do you collect stamps?
- B: 59. \_\_\_\_\_  
(I/ know more/ people/ animals/ plants)
- A: What will you do next?
- B: 60. \_\_\_\_\_  
(I/ collect/ more stamps)

**VIII. Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill each blank in the following passage.**

I have a very interesting and (61)\_\_\_\_\_ hobby. I make short video clips with my digital camera. It was my birthday present from my parents last year. Since then, I have (62)\_\_\_\_\_ three short films. It's great fun! I started asking my friends and relatives to take (63)\_\_\_\_\_ in the films. I have tried to write the story for my video clips. When I have finished the script, I make copies for the "actors". Each scene is small and they can look at the words just (64)\_\_\_\_\_ we start filming. We film at the weekend in my neighbourhood, (65)\_\_\_\_\_ no one has to travel far. When the video clip is finished, I invite all the "actors" and we watch the film at my house.

- |     |             |            |             |              |
|-----|-------------|------------|-------------|--------------|
| 61. | A. enjoy    | B. enjoyed | C. enjoying | D. enjoyable |
| 62. | A. done     | B. played  | C. made     | D. watched   |
| 63. | A. part     | B. role    | C. scene    | D. film      |
| 64. | A. before   | B. after   | C. only     | D. until     |
| 65. | A. although | B. because | C. but      | D. so        |

**IX. Read the passage carefully, and decide whether the sentences are *True* or *False*.**

Our school has a model club. The members of the club try to make water rockets. The students taking part in the club love discovering new things and learning science subjects. A water rocket doesn't cost you much. You can use the things you have used such as empty bottles, old tyres of bicycles. The model has two main parts: the base and the rocket. The pump in the base is made up of water pipes and it can increase the pressure of water. The rocket made from empty bottles should have blades in its tail and a pointed head. These parts help the water go in the correct path as the members have planned. When we use the pump to increase the pressure of water, the rocket will take off and fly into the air. Our school club has just won the first prize on making water rockets.

66. The members of the model club have a love of science. \_\_\_\_\_
67. You can use old things to make water rockets. \_\_\_\_\_
68. It is expensive to make water rockets. \_\_\_\_\_
69. The high pressure of water can make the models fly. \_\_\_\_\_
70. We cannot control the water rockets at all. \_\_\_\_\_

**X. Read the passage, and then choose the best answer.**

Stamp collecting is an interesting hobby. You can learn many things, such as the geography of a country from stamps. Postal stamps are a source of interesting facts and important dates about every country in the world. It makes stamp collecting become very popular.

As you look at the pages of a stamp album, you can learn interesting details of foreign customs, arts, literature, history and culture. Their colours can make you feel relaxed and happy.

Collecting stamps can become a **business**. If you are lucky in finding a special stamp, it will bring you some money besides knowledge and pleasure.

71. Stamp collecting is an interesting hobby because \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. you can learn many things such as the geography of a country from stamps
  - B. stamps give you interesting facts and important dates about a country
  - C. it is very important to collect stamps
  - D. A and B are correct
72. All of the following are true EXCEPT \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. stamps can make you relaxed and happy
  - B. stamps can make you know more
  - C. stamp collecting can make you famous
  - D. you can earn money from your collection if you are lucky
73. According to the passage, it is true to say that \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. stamp collecting helps you become rich and famous
  - B. stamp collecting is a very popular hobby
  - C. stamp collectors can earn a lot of money from stamp collecting
  - D. stamp collecting is a hobby that costs you a lot of money
74. The word "**business**" in the last paragraph is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. the activity of collecting stamps
  - B. the activity of selling stamps from other countries
  - C. the activity of buying stamps from other countries
  - D. the activity of buying or selling something
75. The main idea of the passage is \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. the history of stamp collecting
  - B. good things from stamp collecting
  - C. the ways of stamp collecting
  - D. famous stamp collectors

**XI. Make correct sentences from the words and phrases given.**

76. When/ you/ start/ hobby?

77. We/ find/ make/ models/ very interesting/ because/ we/ should/ creative.

78. I/ think/ future/ people/ take up/ more/ outdoor activities.

79. My best friend/ not/ like/ mountain climbing/ because/ he/ afraid/ heights.

80. My sister/ enjoy/ cook/ and/ make/ new dishes/ her own.

**A. PHONETICS**

I. Put the word into the correct column according to the underlined part.

<i>knife</i>	<i>knives</i>	<i>of</i>	<i>cough</i>	<i>level</i>
<i>leaf</i>	<i>leaves</i>	<i>paragraph</i>	<i>phonetics</i>	<i>Stephen</i>
<i>rough</i>	<i>live</i>	<i>life</i>	<i>tough</i>	<i>very</i>
<i>conversation</i>	<i>move</i>	<i>lovingly</i>	<i>laugh</i>	<i>enough</i>

/f/	/v/
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

II. Say the sentences, and then underline the sounds /f/ and /v/.

- The vase in Fred's living room is very big.
- The flower vase is over there, near the front door.
- It is never very windy in November.
- How far has Faraday travelled in order to play volleyball?

**B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR**

I. Complete the words for the health problems.

- st \_\_\_\_\_ ache
- e \_\_ \_ ache
- s \_\_\_\_\_ th \_\_\_\_\_
- c \_\_\_\_\_
- t \_\_\_\_\_ che

II. Fill in each blank the correct health problem from the box according to the description.

<i>earache</i>	<i>flu</i>	<i>toothache</i>	<i>backache</i>
<i>headache</i>	<i>sore throat</i>	<i>cough</i>	<i>stomachache</i>



1. \_\_\_\_\_ : a pain caused by something being wrong with one of your teeth.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ : a pain in your back.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ : a very severe pain that you feel in your head.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ : pain in your stomach.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ : a pain in the inside part of your ear.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ : a problem which is like a very bad cold, but which causes a temperature.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ : a pain in your throat.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ : a health problem that you make a lot of loud sounds.

**III. Complete the conversation with the words from the box.**

<i>hurt</i>	<i>got</i>	<i>of</i>	<i>shouldn't</i>
<i>take</i>	<i>this</i>	<i>a lot</i>	<i>to</i>

**David:** I've got a new computer. It cost me (1)\_\_\_\_\_.

**Henry:** Wow, it's great! I've always wanted (2)\_\_\_\_\_ have a screen like this. Let's play some games.

*Five hours later*

**David:** Shall we have another game?

**Henry:** I hate to say (3)\_\_\_\_\_, but I think I should stop. I've (4)\_\_\_\_\_ a really bad headache.

**David:** Oh, dear. Do you want to (5)\_\_\_\_\_ a painkiller?

**Henry:** No, it's OK.

**David:** OK. Shall we watch a DVD?

**Henry:** No! I'd like to, but I know I (6)\_\_\_\_\_ look at any more screens. My eyes (7)\_\_\_\_\_. I'm going home.

**David:** OK. See you tomorrow. I'm going to play another game. With a bit (8)\_\_\_\_\_ luck, I'll beat my high score.

**Henry:** If you play now, you'll get a really bad headache too! Bye!

**IV. Look at the advice for a healthy lifestyle, and complete the sentences using *more* or *less*.**

1. Eat \_\_\_\_\_ sweet food.
2. Get \_\_\_\_\_ exercise.
3. Drink \_\_\_\_\_ coffee.
4. Eat \_\_\_\_\_ fast food.
5. Eat \_\_\_\_\_ fruit and vegetables.
6. Drink \_\_\_\_\_ water.
7. Smoke \_\_\_\_\_ and give it up.
8. Relax \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Worry \_\_\_\_\_ about things.
10. Spend \_\_\_\_\_ time on computer games.

## V. Fill in each blank with the correct conjunction.

1. Get up early \_\_\_\_\_ do more exercise.
2. Eat less junk food \_\_\_\_\_ eat more fruit and vegetables.
3. The weather is very cold today \_\_\_\_\_ I should put on a coat.
4. Watch less television \_\_\_\_\_ you can protect your eyes.
5. If you spend less time on computer games \_\_\_\_\_ television programmes, you will have more time for outdoor activities.
6. I have a lot of homework to do this evening \_\_\_\_\_ I don't have time to watch the football match.
7. Take up a new hobby \_\_\_\_\_ you'll have some new friends.
8. He has toothache \_\_\_\_\_ he still eats a lot of sweets and cakes.

## C. SPEAKING

### I. Read the conversations, and complete the sentences from them.

**Mum:** Get up, Tom. Time for school.

**Tom:** I can't. I have a terrible headache. I worked on my geography lessons until midnight. My head hurts.

**Mum:** Will I get you a cup of tea and an aspirin?

**Tom:** Can I have two, please? It's the worst headache in the world.

**Mum:** All right. Let me go and wake Jane first.

**Mum:** Jane! It's time to get up!

**Jane:** I can't. I have a sore throat and my stomach hurts.

**Mum:** OK, Tom, here's your tea. Jane's ill, too.

**Tom:** Really? But she has a Maths test today.

**Mum:** How interesting? She didn't study very much for it yesterday. Do you have a test today, too?

**Tom:** Yes, but it's only a history test.

**Mum:** This is the oldest trick in the book, Tom. Get out of bed now!

### What Tom says:

1. My head \_\_\_\_\_.
2. I worked on \_\_\_\_\_.
3. It's the worst headache \_\_\_\_\_.

### What Jane says:

4. I have a sore throat and \_\_\_\_\_.

### What Mum says:

5. Will I get you a cup \_\_\_\_\_?
6. Jane! It's time to \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Get out \_\_\_\_\_!

**II. Complete the short conversations with the words in the box. Then practise them with a partner.**

<i>hurt</i>	<i>broke</i>	<i>toothache</i>	<i>head</i>
-------------	--------------	------------------	-------------

- A: Does your \_\_\_\_\_ hurt?  
B: Yes, I ran into a tree.
- A: What's the matter?  
B: I \_\_\_\_\_ my toe in the game yesterday.
- A: Why are you walking like that?  
B: I \_\_\_\_\_ my ankle when I was jogging.
- A: Where are you going?  
B: To the dentist's. I have \_\_\_\_\_.

**III. Write the conversations for each situation to give advice, using the phrases given. Then practise them with your partners.**

*Example:* (toothache/ eat any more sweet things ✗/ go to the dentist ✓)

A: What's the matter?

B: I have toothache.

A: Poor you! You shouldn't eat any more sweet things. You should go to the dentist.

- (flu/ be at school ✗/ stay at home ✓)

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

A: \_\_\_\_\_

- (earache/ go to the doctor ✓/ wait for it to be better ✗)

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

A: \_\_\_\_\_

- (stomachache/ lie down ✓/ eat anything ✗)

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

A: \_\_\_\_\_

- (headache/ read any books ✗/ take a painkiller)

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

A: \_\_\_\_\_

- (sore throat/ take some medicine ✓/ eat any crisps ✗)

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

A: \_\_\_\_\_

## D. READING

I. Complete the conversation with the phrases in the box. Then answer the questions below.

<i>It will cost you</i>	<i>With a bit of luck</i>
<i>I hate to say this</i>	<i>I can't wait</i>

(The friends are going to the Buckingham Palace.)

- David:** This is great. (1)\_\_\_\_\_ to see inside Buckingham Palace.
- Peter:** Yeah, maybe the Queen will be our tour guide!
- Linda:** I think we should join the queue. The last tour starts in ten minutes.
- David:** What's the matter, Susan? Are you OK?
- Susan:** No, I don't feel very well. I have a headache and I feel really hot. Maybe I shouldn't come on the tour.
- David:** Hey, everyone. Susan doesn't feel very well. (2)\_\_\_\_\_ but I think we should go home with her.
- Peter:** But how about these tickets? (3)\_\_\_\_\_. We can't go home!
- David:** Yes, we can. (4)\_\_\_\_\_ we can get our money back.

**Answer the questions.**

1. What does David want to see?  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Are the friends in the queue yet?  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Who feels ill?  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. What does David want them to do?  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Were the tickets expensive? Why can they go home?  
\_\_\_\_\_

**II. Read the passage, and then answer the questions.**

Everyone suffers from the common cold at some time or other. It isn't a serious illness, but people spend a lot of money on medicine. The medicine can only relieve the symptoms. That is, it can make you cough less, make you feel better, and stop your nose running for a while. So far, there is no cure for the common cold and no medicine to prevent it. People also drink a lot of hot water with sugar, lemon juice. It helps provide them with a lot of vitamin C.

1. Why is the common cold very popular?  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Is the common cold a serious illness?  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. What does the medicine help people with the common cold?  
\_\_\_\_\_

4. Besides medicine, what do people do to make them feel better?

\_\_\_\_\_

5. Why is it useful?

\_\_\_\_\_

### E. WRITING

Your friend has the flu. Use the notes to help you write her an e-mail with some advice.

go out	x
go to bed early	✓
drink lots of water	✓
check temperature	✓
keep warm	✓
open the windows	x
do any housework	x
rest	✓

**Start like this:**

*Hi Daisy,*

*Sorry to hear that you are ill. Don't worry. I had it last week and I'm much better now. This is the advice the doctor gave me. You should .....*

**Finish like this:**

*Get better soon.*

*Love*

**Your e-mail:**

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

## TEST (UNIT 2)

### I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

1. A. knife                      B. of                      C. leaf                      D. life
2. A. although                      B. enough                      C. paragraph                      D. cough
3. A. junk                      B. sun                      C. put                      D. adut
4. A. headache                      B. architect                      C. chemical                      D. children
5. A. aerobics                      B. calories                      C. cycling                      D. doctor

### II. Find which word does not belong to each group.

6. A. sick                      B. tired                      C. sore                      D. fit
7. A. cough                      B. flu                      C. sunshine                      D. sunburn
8. A. sleep                      B. rest                      C. relax                      D. work
9. A. and                      B. but                      C. so                      D. although
10. A. healthy                      B. fit                      C. well                      D. sick

### III. Choose the correct answers.

11. You can avoid some diseases by \_\_\_\_\_ yourself clean.  
A. keeping                      B. taking                      C. looking                      D. bringing
12. The Japanese eat a lot of fish instead of meat \_\_\_\_\_ they stay more healthy.  
A. but                      B. because                      C. although                      D. so
13. Rob eats a lot of fast food and he \_\_\_\_\_ on a lot of weight.  
A. takes                      B. puts                      C. spends                      D. brings
14. We need to spend less time \_\_\_\_\_ computer games.  
A. play                      B. to play                      C. playing                      D. to playing
15. Do more exercise \_\_\_\_\_ eat more fruit and vegetables.  
A. but                      B. or                      C. and                      D. so
16. After working on computers for long hours, you should \_\_\_\_\_ your eyes and relax.  
A. sleep                      B. sleep in                      C. wake                      D. rest
17. Watching too much television is not good \_\_\_\_\_ you or your eyes.  
A. with                      B. to                      C. at                      D. for
18. When you have flu, you may have a cough and a \_\_\_\_\_ nose.  
A. runny                      B. running                      C. flowing                      D. noisy
19. When you have a temperature, you should drink more water and rest \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. most                      B. more                      C. most                      D. less
20. I forgot to wear a sun hat today and I got a \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. stomachache                      B. earache                      C. backache                      D. headache
21. We should play sports or do exercise in order to stay in \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. look                      B. shape                      C. fit                      D. health
22. Don't eat that type of fish: you may have a/an \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. sick                      B. sore                      C. energy                      D. allergy

23. Do you believe that eating \_\_\_\_\_ carrots helps you see at night?  
 A. much more      B. less      C. most      D. the most
24. We should try to keep everything around us clean and then flu will find it \_\_\_\_\_ to spread.  
 A. difficult      B. difficulty      C. difficultly      D. difficulties
25. Be careful with \_\_\_\_\_ you eat and drink.  
 A. what      B. that      C. who      D. this
26. Eating a lot of junk food may lead to your \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. obesity      B. fitness      C. pain      D. stomachache
27. We should follow the advice from doctors and health \_\_\_\_\_ in order to keep fit.  
 A. people      B. workers      C. managers      D. experts
28. Have a healthy \_\_\_\_\_ and you can enjoy your life.  
 A. lives      B. lifestyle      C. lifeline      D. lively
29. The health \_\_\_\_\_ from that diet expert is that you should eat less junk food and count your calories if you are becoming fat.  
 A. tip      B. tips      C. advices      D. ideas
30. The seafood I ate this morning makes me feel \_\_\_\_\_ all over.  
 A. running      B. well      C. itchy      D. weak

**IV. Complete the sentences with the words from the box.**

<i>cough</i>	<i>headache</i>	<i>burn</i>	<i>hurts</i>	<i>pain</i>
<i>sick</i>	<i>stomachache</i>	<i>temperature</i>	<i>toothache</i>	<i>well</i>

31. Is she \_\_\_\_\_ enough to run one kilometer?
32. "Ow! Be careful with that coffee." – "Look, now I have a \_\_\_\_\_ on my arm."
33. Rob has a \_\_\_\_\_ of 39.5°C.
34. Don't eat so quickly. You'll get a \_\_\_\_\_.
35. I have a \_\_\_\_\_ in my back. I'm going to lie down.
36. That's a bad \_\_\_\_\_. Why don't you have a glass of water?
37. "I have \_\_\_\_\_." – "Why don't you telephone the dentist?"
38. I feel \_\_\_\_\_. Quick, I must get to the bathroom!
39. My arm \_\_\_\_\_ after that game of table tennis.
40. "I have a \_\_\_\_\_." – "That's because you watch too much TV."

**V. Fill in each blank with ONE suitable word.**

41. Don't read or study when there is not \_\_\_\_\_ light.
42. Eat \_\_\_\_\_ low-fat food and eat less junk food.
43. Use eye-drops \_\_\_\_\_ you have sore eyes.
44. Drink \_\_\_\_\_ green tea and \_\_\_\_\_ coffee.
45. When we don't eat enough calories, we will have some health \_\_\_\_\_.

**VI. Rearrange the conversation in the correct order, writing the answer in each blank.**

46. \_\_\_\_ a) **Mary:** You shouldn't eat so much in the evening.  
47. \_\_\_\_ b) **Mary:** Oh, dear. How long have you had that?  
48. \_\_\_\_ c) **Daisy:** I know. What should I do now?  
49. \_\_\_\_ d) **Mary:** You don't look very well. Are you OK?  
50. \_\_\_\_ e) **Daisy:** No. I have a stomachache.  
51. \_\_\_\_ f) **Mary:** So take some medicine and go to bed.  
52. \_\_\_\_ g) **Daisy:** I don't like going to the doctor.  
53. \_\_\_\_ h) **Daisy:** Good idea.  
54. \_\_\_\_ i) **Daisy:** It started last night. I ate a big Chinese meal.  
55. \_\_\_\_ j) **Mary:** You should go to the doctor.

**VII. Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill each blank in the following passage.**

My friend, Ben, has had a few problems with his health. He didn't feel well, (56)\_\_\_\_\_ he told his parents about that. His mum said, "You should eat (57)\_\_\_\_\_ vegetables. You shouldn't eat (58)\_\_\_\_\_ every day." His dad said, "You should go to bed (59)\_\_\_\_\_. You (60)\_\_\_\_\_ stay up so late at night." He phoned me and told me about the problems. I said, "Don't play so (61)\_\_\_\_\_ computer games. Go outside (62)\_\_\_\_\_ play football."

He didn't go to school last week. He went to (63)\_\_\_\_\_ the doctor. The doctor said, "You should stay at home for a week. Don't go out and don't turn on your computer."

At school today, he looked sad. We asked him, "What's (64)\_\_\_\_\_? You should be happy. You weren't here last week."

Ben is (65)\_\_\_\_\_ his school work from last week. He's not happy at all.

- |                   |               |              |                     |
|-------------------|---------------|--------------|---------------------|
| 56. A. because    | B. or         | C. and       | D. but              |
| 57. A. more       | B. less       | C. most      | D. the more         |
| 58. A. ready food | B. fresh food | C. junk food | D. traditional food |
| 59. A. late       | B. lately     | C. earlier   | D. more earlier     |
| 60. A. should     | B. shouldn't  | C. must      | D. needn't          |
| 61. A. many       | B. much       | C. lot       | D. lots             |
| 62. A. or         | B. so         | C. and       | D. but              |
| 63. A. look       | B. look at    | C. find      | D. see              |
| 64. A. bad        | B. trouble    | C. problem   | D. wrong            |
| 65. A. doing      | B. making     | C. playing   | D. taking           |

**VIII. Read the texts carefully, and then decide whether the statements are true (T), false (F), or not mentioned (NM).**

**A. Put it on bread, not a burn**

My friend, Tom, had a little accident at home the other day. He was making a cup of tea when he spilt some boiling water on his arm. He didn't know what to do. He went to the fridge and found some butter. He put this on the burn. It was the wrong thing to do. The butter made the burn worse. You should put a burn under cold water.



## B. Wrong to go out

My cousin, Karen, had the flu. She felt very hot. At first, she stayed in bed, but opened her bedroom windows. She didn't feel better, so she got up and went for a walk. She didn't wear a coat or a scarf. She felt good at first in the cold air, but when she got home, she was really ill. Her temperature went up to over 40<sup>0</sup>C. Her mum phoned the doctor. The doctor told her to stay in bed for a week.

## C. Always clean the cut

My brother, Mick, fell and cut himself on an old broken bottle in the local park. It wasn't a big cut. He tied a handkerchief round his leg and then played football with his friends. When he came home, he put a plaster on it. He didn't wash it or put any antiseptic cream on it. He took the plaster off the next day. His leg looked horrible. Mum took him to the doctor. The doctor cleaned the cut and put a bandage on Mick's leg. Now he can't play sports for a month.

66. Tom burned his arm. \_\_\_\_\_

67. He found some butter on the table. \_\_\_\_\_

68. The butter didn't make his arm feel better. \_\_\_\_\_

69. We should put a burn under cold water. \_\_\_\_\_

70. Karen's bedroom was very hot. \_\_\_\_\_

71. Karen went for a walk because she felt better. \_\_\_\_\_

72. After the walk, Karen's temperature went up. \_\_\_\_\_

73. Mick wasn't worried when he cut himself. \_\_\_\_\_

74. There wasn't any antiseptic cream in the house. \_\_\_\_\_

75. Mick's leg is better now. \_\_\_\_\_

## IX. Make correct sentences from the words and phrases given.

76. You/ not/ play/ more/ computer games/ free time.  
\_\_\_\_\_

77. Doctor/ asking/ Mai/ questions/ about/ health problems.  
\_\_\_\_\_

78. Vitamins/ play/ important/ role/ our diet.  
\_\_\_\_\_

79. We/ keep/ our bodies/ warm/ avoid/ flu/ a cold.  
\_\_\_\_\_

80. Getting/ enough/ rest/ help/ you/ concentrate/ school.  
\_\_\_\_\_

**A. PHONETICS**

I. Put the word into the correct column according the underlined part.

<u>col</u> our	<u>sch</u> ool	<u>k</u> itchen	<u>ch</u> emistry	<u>ch</u> emical
<u>c</u> ulture	<u>g</u> reen	<u>c</u> old	<u>g</u> ame	<u>cl</u> assroom
<u>g</u> arden	<u>s</u> ick	<u>cl</u> othes	<u>c</u> all	<u>com</u> munity
<u>tr</u> affi <u>c</u>	<u>g</u> et	<u>c</u> ancel	<u>cl</u> ean	<u>g</u> roup

/g/	/k/
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

II. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

- |                         |                     |                     |                     |
|-------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1. A. <u>arch</u> itect | B. <u>chur</u> ch   | C. <u>ch</u> ildren | D. <u>arm</u> chair |
| 2. A. <u>g</u> eneral   | B. <u>g</u> arden   | C. <u>g</u> o       | D. <u>g</u> et      |
| 3. A. <u>c</u> ancel    | B. <u>ce</u> iling  | C. <u>c</u> alling  | D. <u>c</u> upboard |
| 4. A. <u>c</u> alorie   | B. <u>c</u> arve    | C. <u>c</u> ollage  | D. <u>c</u> entre   |
| 5. A. <u>u</u> nique    | B. <u>m</u> osquito | C. <u>m</u> osque   | D. <u>q</u> uestion |

**B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR**

I. Match one verb in column A with words in column B to make meaningful expressions, writing the answer in each blank.

Answer	A	B
_____	1. fix	a. a bike
_____	2. tidy	b. in a form
_____	3. care	c. meals
_____	4. fill	d. funds
_____	5. raise	e. a room
_____	6. plant	f. part in sports
_____	7. cook	g. for old people
_____	8. take	h. flowers

**II. Fill in the blanks with the correct words or phrases matching with the verbs. Maybe some verbs can be used more than once.**

<i>elderly people</i>	<i>books</i>	<i>fresh water</i>	<i>school yard</i>
<i>old clothes</i>	<i>blood</i>	<i>homeless people</i>	<i>English lessons</i>
<i>neighbourhood</i>	<i>food</i>	<i>notebooks</i>	<i>opportunities</i>
<i>money</i>	<i>street children</i>	<i>local people</i>	<i>Internet</i>
<i>streets</i>	<i>evening classes</i>	<i>dirty tables</i>	<i>poor children</i>

- clean:** \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- donate:** \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- help:** \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- provide:** \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**III. Complete the following letter, using the words in the box.**

<i>save</i>	<i>letter</i>	<i>do</i>	<i>plant</i>	<i>earn</i>
<i>keep</i>	<i>collect</i>	<i>participate</i>	<i>plans</i>	<i>hear</i>

Dear Linh,

Thank you for your (1) \_\_\_\_\_. I'm happy to (2) \_\_\_\_\_ you've just won the race. I'm going to (3) \_\_\_\_\_ in our school program this month. "Be a Buddy" is having some new (4) \_\_\_\_\_ to help the community. All the members have to (5) \_\_\_\_\_ glass, waste paper and empty cans and send them for recycling. We do this to help (6) \_\_\_\_\_ natural resources and (7) \_\_\_\_\_ some money for the organization. We also (8) \_\_\_\_\_ some trees and flowers along the sidewalks near our school. We (9) \_\_\_\_\_ the streets clean by collecting and emptying all the garbage. We have a lot of things to (10) \_\_\_\_\_, but they are really interesting, aren't they?

Write to me soon and tell me all your news.

Love

Your friend

*Nea*

**IV. Put the verbs in brackets in the correct verb tense: *the Present Perfect or Past Simple*.**

- They (not see) \_\_\_\_\_ the film Titanic yet.
- Tom (call) \_\_\_\_\_ his boss yesterday.
- John (read) \_\_\_\_\_ the letter from Mary already.
- We (not begin) \_\_\_\_\_ to learn for the test yet.

5. I (meet) \_\_\_\_\_ Robert at the supermarket this morning.
6. Nancy (be) \_\_\_\_\_ to Viet Nam several times.
7. I (not see) \_\_\_\_\_ your brother yet.
8. When (your father/ give up) \_\_\_\_\_ smoking?
9. My pen isn't here any more. Someone (take) \_\_\_\_\_ it already.
10. The motorbike looks clean. (you/ wash) \_\_\_\_\_ it?

**V. Put the verbs in brackets in the correct verb tense: *the Present Perfect or Past Simple.***

1. My uncle (move) \_\_\_\_\_ to Da Lat in 2005.
2. The Greens (be) \_\_\_\_\_ to many countries in the world so far.
3. We (go) \_\_\_\_\_ to that village to do volunteer work several times.
4. We (spend) \_\_\_\_\_ our summer vacation in Ha Long Bay last July.
5. Our teacher (explain) \_\_\_\_\_ to us how to use the printer already.
6. The postman (deliver) \_\_\_\_\_ the letter half an hour ago.
7. Mai (not finish) \_\_\_\_\_ her homework yet.
8. I (visit) \_\_\_\_\_ our form teacher in the hospital already.
9. I (hear) \_\_\_\_\_ the good news from Mary a few minutes ago.
10. They (not start) \_\_\_\_\_ the project yet.

**VI. Complete the sentences with the verbs given in the correct form.**

1. I \_\_\_\_\_ hundreds of e-mail in my life. I \_\_\_\_\_ ten last night.  
(write)
2. I \_\_\_\_\_ my homework when I came home, but I (not) \_\_\_\_\_ the washing-up yet. (do)
3. We \_\_\_\_\_ Chinese food last week, but we (never) \_\_\_\_\_ Japanese food. (have)
4. My brother \_\_\_\_\_ two CDs already. He \_\_\_\_\_ the first one two years ago. (make)
5. My parents \_\_\_\_\_ me lots of nice presents. Last year, they \_\_\_\_\_ me a DVD player. (give)
6. My friend \_\_\_\_\_ to lots of countries. Last summer, she \_\_\_\_\_ to India. (go)
7. “\_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ the tennis match yesterday?” – “No. I (never) \_\_\_\_\_ a match against Jack.” (win)
8. \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ a concert last weekend? \_\_\_\_\_ you ever \_\_\_\_\_ in the USA? (play)

**VII. Complete the sentences with the verbs in the box in the correct form.**

<i>send</i>	<i>buy</i>	<i>pass</i>	<i>finish</i>	<i>spend</i>	<i>lose</i>	<i>start</i>	<i>win</i>
-------------	------------	-------------	---------------	--------------	-------------	--------------	------------

1. She \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of money and is going to spend it on a holiday.
2. He \_\_\_\_\_ his homework and he can relax now.

3. He \_\_\_\_\_ his mobile phone and he doesn't know where it is.
4. They \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of clothes and don't have any money left.
5. He \_\_\_\_\_ all his exams and his parents are very pleased with him.
6. They \_\_\_\_\_ all their money on computer games.
7. She \_\_\_\_\_ an e-mail to her friend and is waiting for her friend to write back.
8. My uncle \_\_\_\_\_ a new job. It's hard work but he likes it.

### VIII. Complete the dialogue with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

A: I went to Longman Beach last week. (1. you/ ever be) \_\_\_\_\_ to Longman Beach?

B: Yes, I did. It's beautiful. (2. you/ go) \_\_\_\_\_ there on the weekend?

A: Yeah, I did. I (3. go) \_\_\_\_\_ there on Sunday. I (4. get up) \_\_\_\_\_ at 5 o'clock.

B: Oh! I (5. never get up) \_\_\_\_\_ at that time. It's so early.

A: I (6. get) \_\_\_\_\_ to the beach early enough to see the sunrise. (7. you/ ever see) \_\_\_\_\_ a sunrise?

B: No, I haven't. I prefer sunsets to sunrises.

A: Really? Then I (8. go) \_\_\_\_\_ swimming.

## C. SPEAKING

### I. Fill in each gap the missing question in order to finish the conversation between the interviewer (I) and the volunteer (V).

- How long was each class
- What did you teach them
- What were the evening classes like
- Who were your students
- How about evening classes for adults

I: Well, (1) \_\_\_\_\_ ?

V: The beginners.

I: (2) \_\_\_\_\_ ?

V: We taught them to read and write.

I: (3) \_\_\_\_\_ ? I read it in your working plans.

V: Oh, yes. We also taught adults to read and write in the evening when they were off work.

I: (4) \_\_\_\_\_ ?

V: Not more than 2 hours.

I: (5) \_\_\_\_\_ ?

V: Oh, there was a lot of fun! During class time we also set up some games for the kids.

**II. Number the sentences in the correct order to make a meaningful conversation. Then practise it with your partner.**

- Do you enjoy the work?
- What exactly are you doing?
- Yes, I like helping people.
- What kind of volunteer work have you done?
- We are teaching the children to read and write.
- We have helped people living in the country.

**D. READING**

**I. Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill each blank in the following passage.**

Mr. Brown and some (1)\_\_\_\_\_ are on a very dirty beach now. Today they are ready to (2)\_\_\_\_\_ the beach a clean and beautiful place again. After listening to Mr. Brown's instructions, they are divided into three groups. Group 1 needs to walk along the beach. Group 2 should check the sand, (3)\_\_\_\_\_ group 3 has to check among the rocks. Garbage must be put into plastic bags, and the bags will be collected by Mr. Brown. He will take the bags to the garbage (4)\_\_\_\_\_. They all are (5)\_\_\_\_\_ to work hard to refresh this area.

1. A. voluntary      B. volunteers      C. volunteering      D. volunteer
2. A. make      B. get      C. do      D. change
3. A. so      B. but      C. although      D. and
4. A. dump      B. yard      C. area      D. place
5. A. exciting      B. interesting      C. eager      D. bored

**II. Read the conversation between the interviewer (I) and the head of the village (HoV), and then choose the correct answers.**

**I:** When did the volunteers come to your village?

**HoV:** Well, they came last month.

**I:** How many of them came?

**HoV:** A group of about twelve.

**I:** What did they do on the first day?

**HoV:** They held a meeting with me and some elderly villagers in the first evening to talk about their plans while they were staying in the village.

**I:** What did they do in the following days?

**HoV:** They repaired old cottages, taught the children how to have a healthy and clean life.

**I:** What did the villagers think of them?

**HoV:** Well, they loved them because they were very helpful, active, and polite.

**I:** Was there any change in the village after they came?

**HoV:** Yes, a lot. But they should come to help us more next year. I hope so.

**I:** What do you think of the community service?

**HoV:** Well, it is very helpful, and it makes us believe in the young generation.

- The volunteers came to the village \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. last week                  B. last month                  C. last year                  D. last weekend
- On the first day the volunteers had a meeting with \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. all the villagers  
 B. all the children  
 C. the head of the village and some of the villagers  
 D. all the children and the head of the village
- They talked about \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. staying in the village                  B. having a holiday in the village  
 C. what they would do                  D. what they would help the children
- The villagers like them because they have \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. appearance  
 B. hard working habit  
 C. hard working habit and good behavior  
 D. a healthy and clean life all the time
- The head of the village thinks that \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. the community service is very helpful  
 B. he doesn't believe in the young generation  
 C. he doesn't want the volunteers to come back next year  
 D. the community service is not very helpful

**III. Read the text carefully, and then decide whether the statements are true (T), or false (F).**

A volunteer group came to our little village last month. When they arrived at the end of the path leading to the village, the village children ran after them and we heard their loud songs. On the first day, they had a talk with the head of the village in the morning, and later on with the villagers in the evening.

They brought lots of things with them such as clothes, food, and school things. During the day, they did a lot of different and helpful things for us. They repaired the furniture in our village school and also fixed the houses for elderly people, they dug some new wells so that we could get more fresh water. They gave notebooks and pencils to the school children. In the evening, they taught the village children songs and games.

Life in our village became newer and more exciting. Everyone had a good time.

- The volunteer group brought the happy atmosphere to the small village. \_\_\_\_\_
- They gave talks to all the villagers on the first morning. \_\_\_\_\_
- Clothes, food, school things and so on were given to the villagers. \_\_\_\_\_
- They repaired chairs and tables in the village school. \_\_\_\_\_
- Children were taught songs and games. \_\_\_\_\_

**IV. Read the passage, and then choose the best answers.**

Each country has many good people who take care of others. For example, some of students in the United States often spend many hours as volunteers in hospitals, orphanages or homes for the elderly. They read books to the people in these places, or they just visit them and play games with them or listen to their problems.

Other young volunteers go and work in the homes of people who are sick or old. They paint, clean up, or repair their houses, do the shopping. For boys who don't have fathers, there is an organization called Big Brothers. College students and other men take these boys to basketball games or on fishing trips and help them to get to know things that boys usually learn from their fathers.

Each city has a number of clubs where boys and girls can go and play games. Some of these clubs show movies or hold short trips to the mountains, the beaches, museums, or other places of interest. Most of these clubs use a lot of students as volunteers because they are young enough to understand the problems of younger boys and girls.

1. What do volunteers usually do to help those who are sick or old in their homes?
  - A. They tell them stories and sing and dance for them.
  - B. They do shopping, and repair or clean up their houses.
  - C. They cook, sew, and wash their clothes.
  - D. They take them to basketball games.
2. What do they help boys whose father do not live with them?
  - A. To learn things that boys usually learn from their fathers.
  - B. To get to know things about their fathers.
  - C. To get to know things that boys want from their fathers.
  - D. To learn things about their fathers.
3. Which activity is NOT available for the students at the clubs?
  - A. playing games
  - B. watching films
  - C. going to interest places
  - D. learning photography
4. Why do they use many students as volunteers? – Because \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A. they know how to do the work
  - B. they have a lot of free time
  - C. they can understand the problems of younger boys and girls
  - D. they are good at playing games and learning new things
5. Where don't students often do volunteer work?
  - A. hospitals
  - B. orphanages
  - C. homes for the elderly
  - D. clubs

## E. WRITING

### I. Use the cues to make sentences in the present perfect.

1. I/ buy/ a laptop/ but I/ not use/ it.

---

2. I/ write/ a blog/ but I/ not upload/ any photos to it.

---

3. We/ start/ the game/ half an hour ago/ but we/ not finish/ it.

---

4. My dad/ be/ to London/ but he/ not see/ Big Ben.

---



5. I/ read/ my English book/ but I/ not do/ my English homework.

6. They/ have/ lunch/ but they/ not have/ dinner.

7. I/ download/ some songs/ but I/ not listen/ to them.

## II. Complete the sentences about you.

1. I like to take part in volunteer work because I think \_\_\_\_\_

2. I think we should help street children in our city because \_\_\_\_\_

3. So far I have donated \_\_\_\_\_

4. Last month I helped \_\_\_\_\_

5. I feel more confident after joining a charitable organization because \_\_\_\_\_

6. In order to make our school green and clean, my classmates and I have \_\_\_\_\_

7. One of my classmates comes from a poor family, so I have \_\_\_\_\_

8. I decided to volunteer to clean the street up because \_\_\_\_\_

9. I think we can help elderly people by \_\_\_\_\_

10. I believe that volunteers are the happiest people because \_\_\_\_\_

## TEST (UNIT 3)

### I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

- |                           |                      |                       |                       |
|---------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. A. volun <u>teer</u>   | B. engin <u>ee</u> r | C. committ <u>ee</u>  | D. cl <u>ea</u> r     |
| 2. A. popu <u>l</u> ation | B. volun <u>teer</u> | C. <u>o</u> ffer      | D. <u>pr</u> vide     |
| 3. A. t <u>u</u> tor      | B. volun <u>teer</u> | C. compu <u>t</u> er  | D. commu <u>n</u> ity |
| 4. A. <u>c</u> ertain     | B. <u>c</u> ompare   | C. enc <u>o</u> urage | D. <u>c</u> ommunity  |
| 5. A. <u>ch</u> arity     | B. <u>ch</u> emistry | C. <u>ch</u> emical   | D. me <u>ch</u> anic  |

### II. Find which word does not belong to each group.

- |                |                 |                 |                  |
|----------------|-----------------|-----------------|------------------|
| 6. A. donate   | B. rubbish      | C. blood        | D. money         |
| 7. A. green    | B. trees        | C. collect      | D. plant         |
| 8. A. bank     | B. environment  | C. community    | D. neighbourhood |
| 9. A. blood    | B. homework     | C. students     | D. tutors        |
| 10. A. elderly | B. grandparents | C. nursing home | D. orphan        |

### III. Choose the correct answers.

11. We came to the remote village and \_\_\_\_\_ meals for homeless children.  
A. cook                      B. offered                      C. do                      D. made
12. You should think of \_\_\_\_\_ the volunteer activities in your community.  
A. taking in                      B. taking part in                      C. participating                      D. making
13. Traditional volunteer activities include \_\_\_\_\_ money for people in need, cooking and giving food.  
A. rising                      B. raising                      C. getting                      D. taking
14. You can help young children by \_\_\_\_\_ them to do homework before or after school.  
A. doing                      B. offering                      C. teaching                      D. helping
15. Let's collect and \_\_\_\_\_ warm clothes to homeless children in our city.  
A. give away                      B. give back                      C. take off                      D. put on
16. To help people in remote areas, we can \_\_\_\_\_ transportation, such as giving rides to the elderly.  
A. give                      B. bring                      C. provide                      D. donate
17. Let's help the street children because they have bad \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. live                      B. living conditions  
C. ways of life                      D. earnings
18. They have decided to ride to work \_\_\_\_\_ it is good for their health and the environment.  
A. so                      B. but                      C. although                      D. because
19. Our school has a programme to \_\_\_\_\_ children from poor families in Ho Chi Minh City.  
A. ask                      B. offer                      C. tutor                      D. volunteer
20. Americans \_\_\_\_\_ the tradition of volunteering and helping one another since the early days of the country.  
A. have had                      B. has had                      C. had                      D. to have
21. Volunteers can do general \_\_\_\_\_ such as clean-up projects or home repair.  
A. activities                      B. things                      C. labour                      D. jobs
22. My brother and I \_\_\_\_\_ a white tiger already.  
A. have seen                      B. has seen                      C. see                      D. are seeing
23. I \_\_\_\_\_ blood twice, and \_\_\_\_\_ presents to sick children in the hospital recently.  
A. donate – give                      B. donated – gave  
C. have donated – have given                      D. have donated – gave
24. Volunteering is special \_\_\_\_\_ me because I can help others.  
A. at                      B. for                      C. with                      D. to
25. How many novels \_\_\_\_\_ Charles Dickens \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. does – write                      B. have – written  
C. did – written                      D. did – write
26. We \_\_\_\_\_ to Ha Noi several times, but last summer we \_\_\_\_\_ there by train.  
A. flew – went                      B. has flown – went  
C. have flown – have gone                      D. have flown - went

27. She \_\_\_\_\_ blood twenty times so far.  
 A. donates                    B. has donated            C. is donating            D. to donate
28. He \_\_\_\_\_ lectures to foreign tourists about traditional food and games recently.  
 A. gives                    B. gave                    C. have given            D. has given
29. They have decided to clean up the neighbourhood \_\_\_\_\_ it is full of rubbish.  
 A. so                    B. but                    C. although            D. because
30. "Have you ever \_\_\_\_\_ to Sa Pa?"  
 A. gone                    B. been                    C. seen                    D. visited

**IV. Fill in each blank with ONE suitable word.**

31. Community service is the work you do for the \_\_\_\_\_ of the community.
32. Our club offers \_\_\_\_\_ for free meals for the sick in this hospital.
33. College students can take part in our programme by \_\_\_\_\_ poor or homeless children in Ha Noi.
34. The activities of our organization include recycling things and teaching others \_\_\_\_\_ to do so.
35. Americans do volunteer work not \_\_\_\_\_ they are forced or paid to do it.
36. I have \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of old books for village children.
37. Start your own \_\_\_\_\_ project to make your school a better place.
38. *Be a Buddy* has \_\_\_\_\_ evening classes for street children in our city.
39. Last month our organization started a community garden \_\_\_\_\_ to protect the environment.
40. The members of the club \_\_\_\_\_ blankets for poor children who live in mountainous areas last year.

**V. Put the verbs in brackets in the correct verb tense: the Present Perfect or Past Simple.**

41. Someone (turn) \_\_\_\_\_ on the hi-fi. Do you know that song?
42. The match (just start) \_\_\_\_\_. Our team are playing very well.
43. My mother (do) \_\_\_\_\_ all the cleaning. The apartment is really clean now.
44. He (lose) \_\_\_\_\_ his credit card. He can't find it anywhere.
45. Prices (go) \_\_\_\_\_ up. Everything is more expensive nowadays.
46. (you/buy) \_\_\_\_\_ the laptop yet?
47. I (have) \_\_\_\_\_ this iPad for three years. My father (give) \_\_\_\_\_ it to me when I was in grade 6.
48. I (watch) \_\_\_\_\_ the film Titanic already.
49. Miss White (work) \_\_\_\_\_ in Ha Noi from 2011 and 2014.
50. I (be) \_\_\_\_\_ to Sa Pa twice since 2000.

**VI. Fill in each blank with the correct linking word.**

51. Paul likes to help the sick \_\_\_\_\_ he has donated blood several times.
52. Take a coat \_\_\_\_\_ it's cold outside.
53. Homeless children are in need \_\_\_\_\_ they don't have enough food, warm clothes and schooling.

54. Nick went to bed early \_\_\_\_\_ he felt very tired.  
 55. We went to the nursing home \_\_\_\_\_ we talked and sang for the elderly.

**VII. Fill in each blank with *just, already* or *yet*.**

56. I haven't had lunch \_\_\_\_\_.  
 57. I've \_\_\_\_\_ had my exam results.  
 58. My father has \_\_\_\_\_ returned from his trip to Australia.  
 59. I have \_\_\_\_\_ had three tests this week.  
 60. Have you played your new computer game \_\_\_\_\_?

**VIII. Fill in each gap with the missing question or sentence in order to finish the conversation between the reporter (R) and the villager (V).**

- What do you think of them?
- Would you like them to come back?
- Did they give you anything?
- Well, they'll come back soon, I guess. Well, I have to go. Have a good day.
- Do you still get wet after the repair?

V: My house had a hole in the roof and we got wet when it rained.

R: 61. \_\_\_\_\_

V: Well, it's good now. We don't get wet any more.

R: 62. \_\_\_\_\_

V: Yes. They gave us a big carton of 30 packets of instant noodles, 10 kilograms of rice, and some canned fish.

R: 63. \_\_\_\_\_

V: They were very kind and nice. I love them.

R: 64. \_\_\_\_\_

V: Do you know when they come back?

R: 65. \_\_\_\_\_

V: Sure. Thank you very much. Goodbye.

R: Goodbye.

**IX. Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill each blank in the following passage.**

Each year volunteers from England work abroad: teachers, nurses, engineers, and people with special skills. They do not go for money. Volunteers from Voluntary Service Overseas (VSO) receive the (66)\_\_\_\_\_ pay as a local colleague.

VSO first (67)\_\_\_\_\_ in 1958 when 14 young school leavers went away for a year. Only three years later there were 176 volunteers in 25 different countries, and ten years later there were 15,000 volunteers. At first, almost everyone (68)\_\_\_\_\_ young, and without very much experience. But in the late 1960s, VSO reduced the number of young people, and more and more older, experienced people with different skills went abroad.

Now more than 20,000 people from England have worked abroad as volunteers, some are young, (69)\_\_\_\_\_ are old. Abroad they live simply with the local people, and they return (70)\_\_\_\_\_ England with great understanding of other people in other parts of the world.

66. A. like                      B. same                      C. similar                      D. average  
 67. A. was starting            B. has started            C. started                      D. starts  
 68. A. was                      B. is                      C. were                      D. are  
 69. A. other                      B. another                      C. the other                      D. others  
 70. A. in                      B. to                      C. at                      D. for

**X. Read the passage, and then choose the best answer.**

Scouting began in England in 1907. The Boy Scouts of America started three years later. Today, there are Boy Scout programmes in more than 140 countries. In the United States alone, there are over 4 million Scouts. Boy Scouts learn useful skills while having fun. Scouts swim and play sports, go camping and hiking, and learn how to survive in the outdoors. They also learn how to protect the environment. Other Scout activities include making arts and crafts, learning first aid, and learning how to use computers or fix cars. Scouts often do community service and volunteer work. Scouts learn teamwork by working together.

71. Scouting began in the United States in \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. 1907                      B. 1910                      C. 1917                      D. 1920
72. There are over 4 million Scouts in \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. England                      B. the USA                      C. the world                      D. North America
73. Scouts learn many skills except \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. swimming                      B. collecting things  
 C. going camping                      D. playing sports
74. Scouts activities include many except \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. learning how to make cars                      B. making arts and crafts  
 C. learning first aid                      D. learning how to use computers
75. Scouts learn teamwork by \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. working one by one                      B. working alone  
 C. working all year round                      D. working in groups

**XI. Arrange these words to make meaningful sentences.**

76. you/ have/ finished/ homework/ your/ yet?  
 \_\_\_\_\_

77. printer/ under/ this/ guarantee/ is.  
 \_\_\_\_\_

78. vacation/ since/ we/ haven't/ last/ had/ a/ year.  
 \_\_\_\_\_

79. Ha Noi/ homeless/ give/ in/ clothes/ away/ they/ warm/ to/ people.  
 \_\_\_\_\_

80. our/ a/ in/ makes/ volunteering/ difference/ community.  
 \_\_\_\_\_

# TEST YOURSELF 1

## I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

1. A. fresh                      B. diet                      C. get                      D. correct
2. A. sunburnt                      B. turn                      C. curtain                      D. temperature
3. A. calories                      B. natural                      C. nature                      D. carrot
4. A. junk                      B. regular                      C. dust                      D. brush
5. A. kitchen                      B. ketchup                      C. chips                      D. champagne

## II. Choose the correct answers.

6. We can make postcards and sell them to \_\_\_\_\_ money to help the homeless.  
A. rise                      B. raise                      C. get                      D. own
7. Model making is a wonderful way of \_\_\_\_\_ time alone or even with other people.  
A. spend                      B. spending                      C. take                      D. taking
8. I enjoy reading \_\_\_\_\_ it develops my imagination.  
A. and                      B. but                      C. so                      D. because
9. We can get many \_\_\_\_\_ from volunteer work.  
A. benefit                      B. benefits                      C. advantage                      D. good luck
10. I feel very happy because I can \_\_\_\_\_ a difference in our community.  
A. do                      B. make                      C. bring                      D. take
11. We \_\_\_\_\_ many toys for street children so far.  
A. do                      B. have done                      C. make                      D. have made
12. In the United States, almost everyone, at one time or another, \_\_\_\_\_ a volunteer.  
A. be                      B. are                      C. have been                      D. has been
13. Wear a hat \_\_\_\_\_ you'll get sunburnt.  
A. and                      B. or                      C. but                      D. so
14. Working hard and doing a lot of exercise helps you burn the calories \_\_\_\_\_ easily.  
A. more                      B. less                      C. most                      D. the most
15. About one-fifth of the American population \_\_\_\_\_ volunteer work each year.  
A. do                      B. does                      C. make                      D. makes
16. To help people with transportation, we can \_\_\_\_\_ rides to the elderly.  
A. ask                      B. give                      C. donate                      D. help
17. Doing volunteer work can \_\_\_\_\_ you feel more confident.  
A. do                      B. make                      C. bring                      D. force
18. Stay outdoors \_\_\_\_\_ and do \_\_\_\_\_ physical exercises.  
A. more – less                      B. less – less                      C. more – more                      D. less – more
19. There are many reasons \_\_\_\_\_ it is important to have a hobby.  
A. for                      B. why                      C. so                      D. because
20. I don't think it is difficult to \_\_\_\_\_ my hobby because I love it very much.  
A. take                      B. go                      C. have                      D. follow

21. Don't read or study when there is not enough light because it is \_\_\_\_\_ to your eyes.  
 A. harm                      B. harmful                      C. harmless                      D. unharmed
22. He had a cold \_\_\_\_\_ he didn't wear warm clothes in the cold weather.  
 A. and                      B. or                      C. because                      D. although
23. We should help people \_\_\_\_\_, especially the homeless, the elderly and street children.  
 A. needed                      B. need                      C. at need                      D. in need
24. I think you should \_\_\_\_\_ jogging because it is very useful for your health.  
 A. take                      B. to take                      C. take up                      D. take in
25. My aunt often \_\_\_\_\_ money to charitable organizations to help street children and the homeless.  
 A. makes                      B. does                      C. donates                      D. send

**III. Complete each blank in the sentences with only ONE suitable word.**

26. I've eaten too many sweets. I have \_\_\_\_\_.
27. Do you have a painkiller? I have a \_\_\_\_\_.
28. I have \_\_\_\_\_. I think that food was bad.
29. I have a \_\_\_\_\_ in my leg.
30. Ouch! My arm \_\_\_\_\_.
31. I got some water in my ear and now I have \_\_\_\_\_.
32. I can't eat any biscuits. I have a sore \_\_\_\_\_.
33. That's a bad \_\_\_\_\_. Try some hot lemon tea.
34. When you have flu, you usually have a high \_\_\_\_\_.
35. He ate some seafood yesterday. Now he doesn't feel well. He thinks he has a/an \_\_\_\_\_.

**IV. Fill in the blanks with "yet" or "already".**

36. Have you done volunteer work \_\_\_\_\_?
37. Most of the students have gone home \_\_\_\_\_.
38. Have you seen the newest movie at Thang Long Cinema \_\_\_\_\_?
39. The students have learned the new words in Unit 3 \_\_\_\_\_.
40. I have \_\_\_\_\_ done all my homework.
41. Have you looked up the meaning of this new word \_\_\_\_\_?
42. The Browns have \_\_\_\_\_ lived here for two years.
43. We haven't written the letter to thank the volunteers \_\_\_\_\_.
44. Is it right that you have \_\_\_\_\_ spoken to the bank manager?
45. My pen pal hasn't come to Viet Nam \_\_\_\_\_.

**V. Put the verbs in brackets in the correct verb forms.**

*(Linda and John are on a school camping holiday.)*

- Linda:** Hey, John. (46. you/ put) \_\_\_\_\_ up your tent yet?
- John:** Yeah, I (47. just/ done) \_\_\_\_\_ it. It's that green tent.
- Linda:** I (48. not/ start) \_\_\_\_\_ yet. I (49. borrow) \_\_\_\_\_ this tent from David yesterday, but one of the poles is missing.

**John:** Are you sure? Why don't you have a look in the bag?

**Linda:** I (50. already/ look) \_\_\_\_\_.  
It (51. not/be) \_\_\_\_\_ there.

**John:** Calm down. Linda. I (52. find) \_\_\_\_\_ it. It's under your bag.

**Linda:** That's strange. How (53. it/ get) \_\_\_\_\_ there?

**John:** I have no idea. Come one. Let's put the tent up.

*Ten minutes later*

**John:** There you are. It's ready. It's not bad, but I think my tent (54. be) \_\_\_\_\_ better.

**Linda:** Thanks, John. I owe you one. Oh, no. How terrible!

**John:** What's up now?

**Linda:** I (55. just/ see) \_\_\_\_\_ a spider.

**VI. Read the conversation, and then choose the correct answer for each gap.**

**A:** You (56) \_\_\_\_\_. Are you OK?

**B:** No, I'm not. I (57) \_\_\_\_\_.

**A:** What's (58) \_\_\_\_\_?

**B:** I ate some chocolate and now I (59) \_\_\_\_\_ stomachache.

**A:** Oh, dear! (60) \_\_\_\_\_. You (61) \_\_\_\_\_. (62) \_\_\_\_\_.

**B:** Yes, (63) \_\_\_\_\_.

**A:** OK. Bye for now. (64) \_\_\_\_\_.

**B:** I will. (65) \_\_\_\_\_ a great holiday!

- |                            |                         |                       |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| 56. A. don't feel well     | B. don't look very well | C. are well           |
| 57. A. feel sick           | B. don't feel bad       | C. take medicine      |
| 58. A. the illness         | B. the matter           | C. matter             |
| 59. A. had                 | B. have had a           | C. have               |
| 60. A. Poor you!           | B. You're sad!          | C. Very sick!         |
| 61. A. must be home        | B. will be home         | C. should be home     |
| 62. A. Take a rest         | B. Take many medicine   | C. Eat some more      |
| 63. A. you're a friend     | B. you're right         | C. you're a good idea |
| 64. A. Look after yourself | B. Look at yourself     | C. Look yourself      |
| 65. A. Have you            | B. You're having        | C. Have               |

**VII. Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill each blank in the following passage.**

Hobbies are activities for entertainment. Hobby can cost you almost nothing.

Music is the most popular. For example, many people play the guitar for (66) \_\_\_\_\_ in their free time. Sports provide other (67) \_\_\_\_\_ hobbies. Cycling, running, tennis, table-tennis are the sports that millions of people play during their free time.

Some people's coin collections are wonderful. There are still hundreds of (68) \_\_\_\_\_ collections, such as bottle collections, seashell collections, butterfly collections, and so on.

For some people, a hobby is a favourite (69) \_\_\_\_\_, like chess. In chess, we need two or more people (70) \_\_\_\_\_.



66. A. fun                    B. funny                    C. funnier                    D. funniest  
 67. A. strange                B. normal                    C. favourite                D. unusual  
 68. A. another                B. other                    C. others                    D. the other  
 69. A. exercise                B. game                    C. interest                    D. sports  
 70. A. play                    B. to play                    C. playing                    D. to playing

**VIII. Read the passage, and then decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).**

Volunteering is one of the things that are very useful to you. To your future bosses, volunteer work shows that you are interested in both the world and your future.

Although volunteer work does not bring you money, it gives you a time to learn social skills and make a difference in our community.

Volunteers have the chance to teach English, arts, and sports for homeless children. They also help children with health problems, especially children who cannot see, hear and speak.

- |   | True                     | False                    |
|---|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 71. Doing volunteer work is very useful to you.   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 72. Volunteering is good for your future job.   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 73. You can earn a lot of money from volunteering.  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 74. Volunteers can help homeless children to learn English, arts, and learn how to play sports. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 75. Volunteers only help healthy children.  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

**IX. Read the following passage carefully, and then answer the questions.**

We send young people of different nationalities on expeditions around the world. Our volunteers get the chance to work with local people to learn about different cultures.

There are ten expeditions every year. Each expedition lasts for ten weeks and takes 150 volunteers. They go to countries such as Chile, Namibia, Mongolia and Viet Nam. Some of our volunteers work with local people to provide facilities, for example, building schools. Others work in national parks or help scientists to do environmental research.

These adventurous, young people come from all over the world. To become a volunteer, you have to be between 17 and 25; you have to speak some English and you also have to be enthusiastic, flexible and hard-working members of a team.

76. Who goes on the expeditions?  
 \_\_\_\_\_
77. How many expeditions are there every year?  
 \_\_\_\_\_
78. How long does each expedition last?  
 \_\_\_\_\_
79. What do the volunteers help scientists?  
 \_\_\_\_\_
80. Which language must we know to become a volunteer?  
 \_\_\_\_\_

**A. PHONETICS**

**I. Put the words into the correct column according the underlined part.**

<i>spe<u>cial</u></i>	<i>ess<u>ential</u></i>	<i>vi<u>sion</u></i>	<i>lei<u>sure</u></i>	<i>musi<u>ci</u>an</i>
<i>exhibi<u>ti</u>on</i>	<i>fi<u>cti</u>on</i>	<i>sunsh<u>in</u>e</i>	<i>clo<u>s</u>ure</i>	<i>so<u>ci</u>al</i>
<i>treas<u>ur</u>e</i>	<i>mach<u>in</u>e</i>	<i>usu<u>all</u>y</i>	<i><u>s</u>ure</i>	<i>delic<u>i</u>ous</i>
<i>pleas<u>ur</u>e</i>	<i>televis<u>i</u>on</i>	<i>ch<u>am</u>pagne</i>	<i>meas<u>ur</u>e</i>	<i>occasi<u>o</u>n</i>
<i>attenti<u>o</u>n</i>	<i>decis<u>i</u>on</i>	<i>discuss<u>i</u>on</i>	<i>collage</i>	<i>conclus<u>i</u>on</i>

/ʃ/	/ʒ/

**II. Underline the letter(s) having the sounds /ʃ/ or /ʒ/ in the following sentences, and then read them aloud.**

1. Is there any special programme on television tonight?
2. He usually plays traditional music in his leisure time.
3. It's his pleasure to become a musician.
4. It's essential to have a vision of the future.
5. Let's go to the exhibition to see the art treasures.

**B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR**

**I. Complete the following text, using the words in the box.**

<i>subject</i>	<i>saxophone</i>	<i>pop star</i>	<i>concert</i>
<i>band</i>	<i>singing</i>	<i>painting</i>	<i>art</i>

My friend's name is Nick and he loves music. He is good at (1)\_\_\_\_\_ and he can play the guitar. He wants to learn the (2)\_\_\_\_\_ when he is a bit older. He is already in a (3)\_\_\_\_\_ and they hope to play at the school (4)\_\_\_\_\_ next term. He is also interested in (5)\_\_\_\_\_ so his favourite (6)\_\_\_\_\_ at school is (7)\_\_\_\_\_. But to be honest, he can't wait to leave school and become a (8)\_\_\_\_\_!

## II. Fill in each blank with the words from the box.

<i>hands</i>	<i>weddings</i>	<i>trousers</i>
<i>rap</i>	<i>drums</i>	<i>India</i>

Bhangra is from (1) \_\_\_\_\_ and Pakistan. People traditionally played the music at harvest time and also to celebrate New Year and (2) \_\_\_\_\_. The most traditional instrument is a type of (3) \_\_\_\_\_.

Many modern pop artists mix bhangra with hip hop and (4) \_\_\_\_\_.

The dancers in Ayesha's class learn the dance steps and how to move their (5) \_\_\_\_\_.

Women wear colourful clothes including a shirt, (6) \_\_\_\_\_ and a kind of scarf.

## III. Put the verbs in brackets in the correct verb form.

Kevin O'Donnell works in Hollywood. He records sound for films. He (1. work) \_\_\_\_\_ on his first film in 1980: *Star Wars*. He's now 51 and he (2. help) \_\_\_\_\_ to make more than 100 films. In 1983, he (3. do) \_\_\_\_\_ the sound on the film called *Terms of Endearment*. The film (4. win) \_\_\_\_\_ five Oscars, but O'Donnell (5. not win) \_\_\_\_\_ one. He (6. be) \_\_\_\_\_ at the Oscars in 1983 when he was only 26.

Now, he (7. be) \_\_\_\_\_ to the Oscars 20 times. He has worked on *Top Gun*, *Terminator 3*, *Spider-Man*, *Transformers* and other great films, but he (8. not win) \_\_\_\_\_ an Oscar yet. He (9. write) \_\_\_\_\_ 20 speeches so far, but (10. never given) \_\_\_\_\_ one. The speeches are in a drawer in his house. Kevin doesn't mind. He knows the sound in his films is amazing. He's going to win – one day!

## IV. Rewrite the sentences using "not as...as".

1. Football is more exciting than rugby.

Rugby isn't \_\_\_\_\_.

2. Indonesia is hotter than Viet Nam.

Viet Nam \_\_\_\_\_.

3. French is easier than German.

German \_\_\_\_\_.

4. Anita is friendlier than Alice.

Alice \_\_\_\_\_.

5. The hotel in London was better than the hotel in Paris.

The hotel in Paris \_\_\_\_\_.

## V. Complete the text using the correct comparative form of the adjective or "as...as".

I think Johnny Depp is a (1. good) \_\_\_\_\_ actor than Keanu Reeves. Depp is also in (2. interesting) \_\_\_\_\_ and (3. exciting) \_\_\_\_\_.

films than Reeves. In *Constantine*, for example, Reeves was (4. bad) \_\_\_\_\_ than in any other film.

I think that Depp was (5. good) \_\_\_\_\_ in *Finding Neverland*. Maybe *The Secret Window* or *From Hell* were (6. thrilling) \_\_\_\_\_, but they were not (7. interesting) \_\_\_\_\_ *Finding Neverland*. I think most Hollywood actors are not (8. good) \_\_\_\_\_ Johnny Depp.

**VI. Complete the sentences using the correct comparative, superlative form or "as...as" of the adjectives given.**

1. Some people think that Music isn't (important) \_\_\_\_\_ Maths or Science. I don't agree.
2. The guitar is one of the (popular) \_\_\_\_\_ instruments among young people.
3. It's (easy) \_\_\_\_\_ to play an instrument after you've been practising for a while.
4. I play the piano (good) \_\_\_\_\_ than I play the violin.
5. Guitars aren't (expensive) \_\_\_\_\_ many other instruments.
6. Saxophones are (heavy) \_\_\_\_\_ than a lot of instruments.
7. Traditional pianos are (suitable) \_\_\_\_\_ than keyboards for beginners.
8. Mai is (good) \_\_\_\_\_ singer in our class.

**VII. Choose the correct options.**

**Breaking Records**

Avril Lavigne is one of the <sup>1</sup> *most famous/ more famous* musicians to come from Canada. She became <sup>2</sup> *younger/ the youngest* female to go to the top of the UK album charts in January 2013. She was aged 18 years and 106 days.

But Avril wasn't <sup>3</sup> *more young/ as young as* singer Stevie Wonder. He was only 13 years old when he reached the top of the US chart in 1963.

In 1998, Rebel XD beat the record to become <sup>4</sup> *faster/ the fastest* rapper. In June 2005, he tried again and was even <sup>5</sup> *the quickest/ quicker* than before! He rapped 683 syllables in 54 seconds.

Britney Spears became <sup>6</sup> *bigger/ the biggest* selling teenager in December 2001 when her sales reached 37 million records.

**C. SPEAKING**

**I. Rearrange the sentences in order to make a meaningful conversation, writing the number (1-10) in each blank. The first (0) has been done for you.**

- \_\_\_\_\_ a. Oh, no. Today is Sunday. Why don't you relax?  
\_\_\_\_\_ b. Will you be free this evening?  
\_\_\_\_\_ c. Bye. See you then.  
\_\_\_\_\_ d. I'm afraid not. I'm going to do my Physics homework.  
\_\_\_\_\_ e. That's fine. See you this evening. Bye.  
\_\_\_\_\_ f. I'm doing my Math homework.

- \_\_\_\_\_ g. What should we do?  
 \_\_\_\_\_ h. What about going to the movie theater? There's a good movie on this evening.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ i. At my house at 7 o'clock. Is it OK?  
 0 j. Hello, Lan. What are you doing now?  
 \_\_\_\_\_ k. That's a good idea. Where can we meet?

**II. Number the sentences of the conversation in the correct order.**

- Mr Davies:** Here you are.  
 **Mr Davies:** How much is that?  
 **Mr Davies:** The six o'clock film.  
 **Mr Davies:** Two adults and two children, please.  
 **Mr Davies:** Two tickets for *The Water Horse*, please.  
 **Woman:** Adult or child?  
 **Woman:** Thank you. Enjoy the film.  
 **Woman:** OK, and which performance do you want to see?  
 **Woman:** That's \$18 altogether.  
 **Woman:** Two adults and two children at six o'clock. That's fine.

**III. Complete the conversation with the correct words. You can see the first letter of each word.**

- Emily:** There's a concert on Saturday. Do you want to go?  
**Victoria:** I don't know. <sup>1</sup>W\_\_\_\_\_ is it?  
**Emily:** At the theater.  
**Victoria:** <sup>2</sup>H\_\_\_\_\_ <sup>3</sup>m\_\_\_\_\_ are the tickets?  
**Emily:** I think they're about £10.  
**Victoria:** That's not bad. What <sup>4</sup>t\_\_\_\_\_ <sup>5</sup>d\_\_\_\_\_ it <sup>6</sup>s\_\_\_\_\_?  
**Emily:** It starts at seven o'clock. There are three bands and it finishes at about ten o'clock.  
**Victoria:** What <sup>7</sup>k\_\_\_\_\_ of music do they play?  
**Emily:** Rock and rap.  
**Victoria:** Great. What are the bands called?  
**Emily:** I don't <sup>8</sup>r\_\_\_\_\_ their names. Sorry.  
**Victoria:** OK. Let's go to the theater and buy two tickets and <sup>9</sup>t\_\_\_\_\_ we can go shopping.  
**Emily:** Great and <sup>10</sup>a\_\_\_\_\_ that we can have a pizza.  
**Victoria:** Good idea.

## D. READING

### I. Read the passage, and then answer the questions.

There are many activities after school hours in Lan's school, so she and her classmates can take part in them. Lan and Mai join the school theater group and they are also the members of the stamp collector's club. They are rehearsing a play for the Teacher's Day. Hung and Tuan are members of the school sport club. They play for the school football team. Ha and Thanh are the members of the school art club, and they want to be good artists one day in the future.

1. Which of them joins the school theater group?

---

2. What are they doing now?

---

3. Who are the members of the stamp collector's club?

---

4. Who plays for the school football team?

---

5. Who are the members of the school art club?

---

### II. Read the passage, and then answer the questions.

#### ***School of Rock***

Have you seen the film *School of Rock*? It's about a rock musician who became a teacher. The film is based on a real music school which is run by Paul Green. Paul Green started the first *School of Rock* in 1998 in Philadelphia in the USA. He gave students rock music lessons after school, but he wanted to do more. Now he gives them the chance to play in rock concerts. "Some of our students have never played in front of a real audience before. We teach them how to do it," he says. He has already taught hundreds of young people to be rock performers, and now there are over 30 schools of rock in different towns in the USA.

1. How many schools of rock are there in the USA?

---

2. What is the film *School of Rock* about?

---

3. When did Paul Green start his first rock school?

---

4. What does he teach his students to do?

---

5. How many students has he taught?

---

### III. Read the text about an artist. Choose the correct answer: A, B, or C.

You can't buy a drawing by Julian Beever and you can't see his work in a gallery or museum. Julian makes his amazing pictures on the pavements of city streets. People have called him "the Pavement Picasso" and perhaps you have seen his pictures on the Internet.

Julian has made hundreds of pieces of "pavement art" in different countries – in many parts of Europe and also in the USA, Australia, Japan, Argentina, and Brazil.

His drawings can take three or four days to finish. But because he draws with chalk, the drawings only stay for a short time. When people walk on them or when it rains, they quickly disappear. For Julian, this isn't a problem. The drawings survive in the photos he has taken, and this is the most important thing for him.

Julian's fame hasn't come from experts in the art world, but from the Internet. "The reason why my work has become well known is because people like it and they've sent it to each other on the Internet," he says. "So I know that what I do is popular."

Julian Beever is from Leicestershire in England, but he now lives in Belgium.

- Julian Beever makes drawings \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. outside                      B. on his computer                      C. for exhibitions in a gallery
- He has worked \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. in a few cities                      B. in lots of countries                      C. with hundreds of people
- His pictures \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. are easy to draw                      B. look good when it rains                      C. don't stay for a long time
- Lots of people know Julian's art because \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. they know a lot about art  
B. he has sent photos to them  
C. they have seen it on the net
- Julian Beever \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. hasn't lived in Britain  
B. hasn't tried to be a star in the art world  
C. isn't very interested in photos

## E. WRITING

Read the profiles and complete the information about Lyle Lovett and The Corrs.

### A. Lyle Lovett

Style of music:	country
First record:	1986
Number of records in his life:	13 albums so far
Awards:	four Grammys
Personal life:	husband of Julia Roberts (1993-1995)

### B. The Corrs

Group:	three sisters and a brother
Style of music:	Irish folk/ pop
First album:	1995
Number of albums:	five up to now
Awards:	22 altogether, no Grammys awards yet

**Answers:**

- A. Lyle Lovett is a <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ singer. He <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ his first record in <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. He <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ 13 albums in his life. He <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ four Grammys awards. He <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ Julia Roberts in <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, but they divorced in <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.
- B. The Corrs are three <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ and a <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. They play <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ and <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ music. They <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ their first album <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. They <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ five albums. The Corrs <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ already \_\_\_\_\_ 22 awards, but they <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ not \_\_\_\_\_ a Grammy (not <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_!).

**TEST (UNIT 4)**

**I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.**

1. A. exhibition      B. questin      C. collection      D. tradition
2. A. pleasure      B. leisure      C. closure      D. sure
3. A. discussion      B. decision      C. treasure      D. vision
4. A. saxophone      B. music      C. so      D. expensive
5. A. similarity      B. talent      C. happy      D. hard

**II. Find which word does not belong to each group.**

6. A. saxophone      B. guitar      C. violin      D. artist
7. A. camera      B. photograph      C. portrait      D. opera
8. A. ballet      B. pop      C. rock      D. rap
9. A. singer      B. actor      C. film director      D. film producer
10. A. canvas      B. water puppet      C. crayon      D. pencil

**III. Choose the correct answers.**

11. The Brit School is the most famous \_\_\_\_\_ arts school in Britain.  
A. perform      B. performed      C. performing      D. performance
12. Since the 1970s, the festival in Glastonbury has taken \_\_\_\_\_ almost every year and has grown in size.  
A. note      B. notice      C. time      D. place
13. Dong Ho paintings are made on \_\_\_\_\_ paper with beautiful \_\_\_\_\_ colours.  
A. tradition – nature      B. traditional – natural  
C. traditional – nature      D. tradition – natural
14. You can see many interesting \_\_\_\_\_ in that art gallery.  
A. paints      B. colours      C. portraits      D. paper
15. Water puppetry \_\_\_\_\_ in the 11<sup>th</sup> century in the villages of the Red River Delta of North Viet Nam.  
A. start      B. begin      C. originated      D. formed



16. The puppet shows present \_\_\_\_\_ themes of Vietnamese villages.  
 A. country                      B. rural                      C. city                      D. urban
17. The group is \_\_\_\_\_ for their albums and tours around the world.  
 A. well-prepared      B. well-known      C. well-know      D. know-how
18. The performances of puppetry show \_\_\_\_\_ in the countryside and \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. everyday life – folk tales                      B. every day life – folk stories  
 C. everyday life – folk rock                      D. every day lives – folk people
19. I never watch ballet, and my sister doesn't \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. too                      B. so                      C. either                      D. like that
20. Teenagers in Viet Nam like K-pop, and they like Korean films \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. too                      B. either                      C. so                      D. however
21. Today, subjects like music and arts are put into the school \_\_\_\_\_ in Viet Nam.  
 A. school year      B. subjects      C. curriculum      D. education
22. For many people, a good knowledge of music and arts is regarded as a \_\_\_\_\_ for every student.  
 A. necessary      B. need      C. needs      D. necessity
23. Arts are of great \_\_\_\_\_ in education, especially for young children.  
 A. important      B. importance      C. unimportant      D. unimportance
24. Classical music is not \_\_\_\_\_ as pop music.  
 A. as exciting      B. as excited      C. exciting      D. more excited
25. This film is not \_\_\_\_\_ long as the film I watched last week.  
 A. as                      B. but                      C. either                      D. too
26. My brother's taste in art is quite different \_\_\_\_\_ mine.  
 A. than                      B. as                      C. to                      D. from
27. My village is not \_\_\_\_\_ it was ten years ago.  
 A. same as                      B. the same                      C. the same as                      D. the same like
28. The villagers are \_\_\_\_\_ they were years ago. There is no change at all.  
 A. as friend as      B. as friendly as      C. different from      D. not as friendly as
29. This year's musical festival is not \_\_\_\_\_ it was last year.  
 A. as good as      B. as well as      C. different from      D. worse
30. My cousin, Mai, is the same age \_\_\_\_\_ me.  
 A. like                      B. to                      C. of                      D. as

**IV. Fill in each blank in the conversation with ONE suitable word. The first letter of each word has been given.**

**Headmaster:** Today, we welcome one of our old students. He's David Jones, the famous rock guitarist. David is here to answer your questions. Who wants to start first?

**Student 1:** Have you <sup>31</sup> e \_\_\_\_\_ sung with anyone famous?

**David:** Yes, I have. I've <sup>32</sup> j \_\_\_\_\_ finished a tour of America, and last week I played with Bob Dylan.

- Student 1:** Who?
- David:** Don't you know Bob Dylan?
- Student 1:** No. I've <sup>33</sup> n \_\_\_\_\_ heard of him.
- David:** He's a big star. He's made hundreds of records. He <sup>34</sup> w \_\_\_\_\_ famous in the 1960s.
- Student 1:** That's ages ago. My mum was born in 1960. Maybe my grandfather knows him.
- Student 2:** Have you seen the Rolling Stones?
- David:** Of course. I <sup>35</sup> s \_\_\_\_\_ them last year.
- Student 3:** Have you <sup>36</sup> b \_\_\_\_\_ to Sting's house?
- David:** No, I haven't. I've never met Sting.
- Student 4:** When <sup>37</sup> d \_\_\_\_\_ you make your first record?
- David:** I <sup>38</sup> m \_\_\_\_\_ my first record in 1971.
- Student 5:** How many songs have you <sup>39</sup> w \_\_\_\_\_?
- David:** About 50.
- Student 5:** Do you <sup>40</sup> w \_\_\_\_\_ *Stairway to Heaven*?
- David:** No, I didn't. That was Led Zeppelin. My band was called *Dark Clouds Over the Sea*.
- Student 5:** Can you sing us a song?
- David:** Of course. This one's called *My Old School*. I wrote it about this place.

**V. Fill in each blank with the comparative, superlative or (not) as....as of the adjective given in brackets.**

The New Orleans Carnival is (41. not/ big) \_\_\_\_\_ the carnival in Rio de Janeiro, but it is (42. famous) \_\_\_\_\_ carnival in the USA. It is (43. colourful) \_\_\_\_\_ the carnival in Rio de Janeiro and it is (44. exciting) \_\_\_\_\_ event in New Orleans every year. The weather in New Orleans is (45. not/ good) \_\_\_\_\_ that in Rio de Janeiro, but people are (46. friendly) \_\_\_\_\_. The carnival season lasts for two weeks, but (47. busy) \_\_\_\_\_ time is the last five days. The carnival is (48. big) \_\_\_\_\_ and (49. exciting) \_\_\_\_\_ than ever during these five days. It is (50. good) \_\_\_\_\_ time to visit New Orleans!

**VI. Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill each blank in the following text.**

My friends and I have written a (51) \_\_\_\_\_. We have decided to (52) \_\_\_\_\_ it for our school. I have already built the set. Karen has just finished the (53) \_\_\_\_\_ for us to wear. I haven't learned the (54) \_\_\_\_\_ yet, so I am a bit nervous, but I'm excited (55) \_\_\_\_\_. I haven't been in a play before. I can't wait!

- |                |            |         |             |
|----------------|------------|---------|-------------|
| 51. A. film    | B. song    | C. play | D. club     |
| 52. A. perform | B. make    | C. take | D. build    |
| 53. A. stage   | B. actors  | C. play | D. costumes |
| 54. A. script  | B. scripts | C. play | D. lessons  |
| 55. A. also    | B. then    | C. too  | D. either   |

**VII. Read the passage, and then answer the questions.**

***My free time***

On weekdays, I don't have much free time. When I get home from school, I usually do my homework, watch some TV or read a book. My parents bought me a new guitar for my birthday so I play that a lot too.

At the weekend, I usually relax with my friends, John and Thomas. We really like playing music together. Thomas plays the keyboard and John plays the drums. John has a set of drums in his bedroom, so we usually practise at his house. John has also written some songs, so we are practising them at the moment. My sister sometimes sings with us and we are hoping to play some concerts one day!

In the holidays, I sometimes go on day trips with my family. I am really interested in science. That's why we often go to the Science Museum. We usually go to the beach in August. We always have a great time, but the best thing is lying on the sand and listening to music on my iPod.

56. What does the student often do in his free time on weekdays?

\_\_\_\_\_

57. Which musical instruments do John and Thomas have?

\_\_\_\_\_

58. Who has written some songs? Who sometimes sings with them?

\_\_\_\_\_

59. What are they hoping to do in future?

\_\_\_\_\_

60. What does he sometimes do with his family? What does the student like doing in the holiday best?

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

**VIII. Complete each sentence so that it means the same as the sentence above.**

61. This room is larger than the one at the end of the corridor of the art gallery.

The room at the end of the corridor of the art gallery is not \_\_\_\_\_.

62. I think action films are more exciting than romance films.

In my opinion, romance films are not \_\_\_\_\_.

63. Salvador Dali's paintings are different from Picasso's paintings.

Picasso's paintings are not \_\_\_\_\_.

64. I am interested in comic books, and my brother is also interested in comic books.

I am interested in comic books, and my brother is \_\_\_\_\_.

65. My mother doesn't like thrillers. I don't like them.

My mother doesn't like thrillers, and I don't \_\_\_\_\_.

66. She takes photographs and collects coins as hobbies.

Her hobbies are \_\_\_\_\_

67. “Chèo” or “Cải lương” are considered some kinds of traditional opera in Viet Nam.

Viet Nam has some kinds of \_\_\_\_\_

68. My sister sings better than me.

I don't sing \_\_\_\_\_

69. Ballets and modern dance are quite different.

Ballets and modern dance are not \_\_\_\_\_

70. The project was shorter than we thought at first.

The project was not as \_\_\_\_\_

**IX. Write a letter to invite a friend to a circus, using the following cues.**

Dear Nam,

71. I/ happy/ hear/ that/ you/ your family/ well.

\_\_\_\_\_

72. You/ remember/ circus/ we/ see/ last year?

\_\_\_\_\_

73. Circus/ coming/ again/ our city.

\_\_\_\_\_

74. My father/ tickets/ circus.

\_\_\_\_\_

75. We/ you/ go/ us.

\_\_\_\_\_

76. You/ free/ this weekend?

\_\_\_\_\_

77. We/ meet/ 7 pm/ outside/ theatre.

\_\_\_\_\_

78. Show/ begin/ 7.30 pm.

\_\_\_\_\_

79. I/ hope/ we/ good time/ together.

\_\_\_\_\_

80. I/ look forward/ see/ you/ there.

\_\_\_\_\_

Have a good day!

Regards,

Tuan

**A. PHONETICS**

I. Put the word into the correct column according the underlined part.

<i>more</i>	<i>bottle</i>	<i>pork</i>	<i>fork</i>	<i>sauce</i>
<i>pot</i>	<i>short</i>	<i>salt</i>	<i>omelette</i>	<i>what</i>
<i>caught</i>	<i>daughter</i>	<i>audience</i>	<i>yogurt</i>	<i>chocolate</i>
<i>dialogue</i>	<i>shopping</i>	<i>lot</i>	<i>got</i>	<i>not</i>
<i>morning</i>	<i>talk</i>	<i>laundry</i>	<i>water</i>	<i>soft</i>

/ɒ/	/ɔ:/

II. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

1. A. warm                      B. wash                      C. wall                      D. walk
2. A. pan                      B. bag                      C. wash                      D. add
3. A. sauce                      B. daughter                      C. caught                      D. aunt
4. A. wash                      B. off                      C. draw                      D. on
5. A. audience                      B. naughty                      C. document                      D. water

**B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR**

I. Choose the word that is a different kind of food to the others.

1. A. apple                      B. banana                      C. lemon                      D. pork
2. A. beans                      B. eggs                      C. salad                      D. mushrooms
3. A. beef                      B. carrot                      C. lamb                      D. pork
4. A. coffee                      B. fruit juice                      C. tea                      D. tomato
5. A. cakes                      B. chocolate                      C. nuts                      D. fish

**II. Put the words or phrases about food and drink in the correct column.**

apples	coffee	hot chocolate	milk	bread
pork	beef	orange juice	sausages	green tea
mineral water	eggs	sandwiches	sticky rice	pizza
noodles	lemon tea	cheese	pancake	beef noodle soup
toast	chicken	shrimp	yoghurt	eel soup

Food	Drink

**III. Write questions and short answers about the food. Use the correct form of *there is* or *there are* and *some*, or *any*. Follow the examples.**

Example: bananas?/ Yes.

**A:** Are there any bananas? **B:** Yes, there are some.

cheese?/ No.

**A:** Is there any cheese? **B:** No, there isn't any.

1. cakes?/ Yes. \_\_\_\_\_
2. butter?/ No. \_\_\_\_\_
3. mineral water?/ Yes. \_\_\_\_\_
4. eggs?/ No. \_\_\_\_\_
5. salt?/ Yes. \_\_\_\_\_
6. carrots?/ Yes. \_\_\_\_\_
7. apples?/ Yes. \_\_\_\_\_
8. sugar?/ Yes. \_\_\_\_\_

**IV. Fill in each blank with the correct word: *some*, or *any*.**

**Mai:** I'm really hungry. What did you have for lunch?

**Nam:** Nothing! I wanted to make <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ pancakes but I don't know how to make one.

**Mai:** OK. We can have <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ pancakes. Is there <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ flour and cooking oil?

**Nam:** Yes, and we have <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ eggs too.

**Mai:** Good. I need two eggs for each pancake. I want <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ turmeric too.

**Nam:** Yes, there is <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ for you. Do you need <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ minced pork and green onions?

**Mai:** Yes, I need <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. OK, that's enough for us to make pancakes now.

**V. Match the two parts of the sentences, and write the answers (a-h) in the blanks.**

- |       |                       |                                |
|-------|-----------------------|--------------------------------|
| _____ | 1. How much           | a. food at the party?          |
| _____ | 2. There's a lot      | b. onions.                     |
| _____ | 3. There aren't many  | c. orange juice.               |
| _____ | 4. How many           | d. of tomatoes in this salad.  |
| _____ | 5. We don't have much | e. milk do we have?            |
| _____ | 6. Was there much     | f. strawberries in the garden? |
| _____ | 7. There are a lot    | g. of ham on this pizza.       |
| _____ | 8. Are there many     | h. potatoes do you want?       |

**VI. Complete the questions with "How much" or "How many".**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ homework do you do a day?
2. \_\_\_\_\_ sleep do you get a night?
3. \_\_\_\_\_ text messages do you send a day?
4. \_\_\_\_\_ money have you got in your pocket?
5. \_\_\_\_\_ cousins have you got?
6. \_\_\_\_\_ packets of biscuits do you eat a week?
7. \_\_\_\_\_ people are there in this classroom?
8. \_\_\_\_\_ time is there to the end of the lesson?

**VII. Make questions with "How much" or "How many" and the cues given.**

1. water/ you/ drink/ every day?  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. students/ in you class?  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. hours/ you/ sleep/ every night?  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. money/ you/ have/ in your bag or pocket?  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. subjects/ you/ study/ at school?  
\_\_\_\_\_

**C. SPEAKING**

**I. Put the sentences in the correct order to make a meaningful conversation. Write the answers in the blanks.**

- \_\_\_\_\_ a. **David:** Is there any meat?
- \_\_\_\_\_ b. **David:** Great! Yuk! This isn't the tomato sauce!
- \_\_\_\_\_ c. **David:** I'm quite hungry. Are there any biscuits?
- \_\_\_\_\_ d. **David:** Thanks. Nice chickens! Is there any tomato sauce?
- \_\_\_\_\_ e. **Susan:** Oh, sorry. My fault. It's hot chilli sauce!
- \_\_\_\_\_ f. **Susan:** I'm not sure. Um, no, there aren't. There are no biscuits and there aren't any cakes but there are some cheese sandwiches.
- \_\_\_\_\_ g. **Susan:** Yes, there's a bottle in the bag. Here you are.
- \_\_\_\_\_ h. **Susan:** Yes, there's some cold chicken. And here are some tomatoes.

**II. Ask and answer the questions. Use the cues given or your own answers.**

1. Do you have a healthy diet? – Yes, I do./ No, I don't.
2. Which foods do you eat a lot of? – I eat a lot of (fruit/ vegetables/ dairy fruits/ meat/ home-made food/ fast food).
3. What do you like to eat as a snack? – I like to eat (fruit/ biscuits/ nuts/ sandwiches/ candy).
4. How many different kinds of fruit and vegetables do you eat in a day? – I eat (two/ three/ four). They are (apples/ pears/ bananas/ carrots/ cucumber/ beans/ salad).  
What are they?

**D. READING**

**I. Put the instructions (a-f) to make an English breakfast sandwich in the correct order. Write the answer (1-6) in the blanks.**

- \_\_\_\_\_ a. Fry the tomato, bacon and egg in some oil.
- \_\_\_\_\_ b. Put one piece of toast on a plate. Add the bacon, then the egg, then the tomato.
- \_\_\_\_\_ c. Toast the bread.
- \_\_\_\_\_ d. Put the other piece of toast on top.
- \_\_\_\_\_ e. Slice the tomato.
- \_\_\_\_\_ f. Add some salt and pepper.

**II. A girl is talking about food. Match the short passages (1-5) with the topics (a-f), and write the answers in the blanks. There is one extra topic.**

- a. the international food she likes best \_\_\_\_\_
- b. how often she goes to the restaurant \_\_\_\_\_
- c. how good she is at cooking \_\_\_\_\_
- d. how healthy her eating habits are \_\_\_\_\_
- e. her favourite restaurant \_\_\_\_\_
- f. the food she doesn't like \_\_\_\_\_

1. I'm lucky. My mum is a great cook and she loves cooking. She likes teaching me and my brother too, so I can cook quite a lot of dishes. My mum's dishes are better but my dishes are OK.
2. I eat most things. I was a vegetarian for a few months last year but I love meat so I stopped. I don't like food with a lot of salt or fat in it. Oh, I know, mushrooms. I hate them. They are awful.
3. That's a difficult question. We always go on holiday to a different country and every year I come home and say that the food was the best in the world! Our last holiday was to Japan so now I love Japanese food but I love Vietnamese food, too.
4. I try to eat good food and I try not to eat unhealthy snacks. If I'm hungry, I eat carrots, not sweets, but at the weekend, my mum always makes cakes and I always eat a lot. I love them.
5. Last week, my parents took me to a very nice restaurant for my birthday. The food was great but the restaurant was very formal. Next year, I want to go to the Beach Restaurant. They are very friendly and the food is good. I think that's my favourite.



### III. Read the passage carefully, and then do the following tasks.

Our school has an organic garden. We learn about growing vegetables and looking after them in our food science lessons. In the holidays, we can volunteer to work in the garden. My family live in a flat so it's great for me to have a garden at school. Volunteers can take some vegetables home too, so my parents are very happy that I like working there.

My aunt and uncle live on a farm in the Red River Delta. It isn't very big but they have hens, pigs, and cows. We always go to stay with them in summer. It's a beautiful place and the food is amazing. All the vegetables are so fresh and, because the farm is organic, we know they are healthy, too.

We live in Ha Noi and my parents buy food at The Viet Fresh Farm Shop near our flat. It is very famous in our city and all the food they sell is from animals that live on the farm or vegetables that they grow. They organise a food festival once a year and we always go to eat the free food and watch cookery demonstrations. They are really interesting and you can learn a lot about cooking.

#### A. Read the passage again. Match the underlined words with the correct meanings (1-6).

1. very good \_\_\_\_\_.
2. something or someone that a lot of people know about \_\_\_\_\_.
3. activities which explain and show how to do something \_\_\_\_\_.
4. people working or helping because they want to, not for money \_\_\_\_\_.
5. the animals that the meat beef comes from \_\_\_\_\_.
6. offer to do something for no money \_\_\_\_\_.

#### B. Read the passage again. Choose the best answer to the questions.

1. The students at the school \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A. have to work in the school garden
  - B. get some free food for working in the garden
  - C. have food science lessons during the holidays
  - D. use the vegetables from the garden in cookery lessons
2. The student who wrote about the school garden \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A. works there with her parents
  - B. also helps in her parents' garden
  - C. would like to work there in summer but she can't
  - D. doesn't have a garden at home
3. We know that the student who writes about the farm of her aunt and uncle certainly \_\_\_\_\_.

A. goes there every year	B. helps on the farm
C. likes eating meat from the farm	D. eats only healthy food
4. The Viet Fresh Farm Shop \_\_\_\_\_.

A. is the best farm shop in Ha Noi	B. is famous all over Viet Nam
C. sells only vegetarian food	D. only sells food from their farm
5. If you go to The Viet Fresh Farm food festival you \_\_\_\_\_.

A. have to pay for the food	B. can watch how to cook different dishes
C. see animals from the farm	D. have to take food to sell

**IV. Read the passage carefully, and then do the following tasks.**

***The healthy eating diet***

Healthy eating is about feeling great and having more energy. If you choose the right foods, your healthy diet will be a tasty diet, too. You can still enjoy your favourite sweet and salty foods, but too much sugar and salt is bad for your body.

Dairy products like milk, cheese, and yoghurt are great because they contain calcium and keep your teeth and bones healthy. You should choose low-fat dairy products.

Meat, fish, eggs, beans, and nuts are important, too. They keep our bodies healthy and they give us energy to work and play.

Whole grains are an important part of every meal. If you eat lots of whole grains, you will have a healthy heart. Whole grains are in bread, cereal, pasta, and rice. Dark bread and brown rice are great sources of whole grains.

Fruit and vegetables are the most important part of a healthy diet. They are low in calories and full of vitamins. Eat lots of fruit and vegetables with every meal, and as snacks during the day. Fruit and vegetables with darker colours have more vitamins.

***A. Find the underlined words in the text to match the meanings.***

1. \_\_\_\_\_ : an amount of energy.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ : the power that your body gets from food.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ : food that you eat between meals.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ : If food is this, it tastes of sugar.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ : If food is this, it tastes of salt.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ : the types of food that you eat most often.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ : things in food that we need to grow and be healthy.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ : the place where you get something from.

***B. Answer the following questions.***

1. What does the healthy eating diet help you?  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. What can you also enjoy when you have a healthy eating diet?  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Why are dairy products good for your health?  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. What is the function of meat, fish, eggs, beans and nuts?  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Why are whole grains an important part of every meal?  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. What types of foods can we get whole grains from?  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. Why are fruit and vegetables the most important part of a healthy diet?  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. What types of fruit and vegetables have more vitamins?  
\_\_\_\_\_

## E. WRITING

Write the instructions to make iced tea lemon (*tra chanh*), using the words or phrases given, and words showing sequence (*first, second, next, then, after that, finally*).

*Ingredients:*

- tea bags (You can use any kind of tea you love: lotus tea, Lipton tea, or dried tea leaves).
- lemon, sugar, ice.

*Process:*

1. put/ tea bag/ small cup/ then/ pour/ slowly/ boiled water/ it.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. wait/ 5-7 minutes/ then get/ tea bag/ out.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. cut/ lemon/ half/ then/ press/ water/ from it/ not/ use/ seeds.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. add/ sugar/ and/stir/ mixture/ then/ add/ ice.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. your drink/ already/ served/ pour/ it/ glasses.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. decorate/ sliced lemon/ basil leaves/ surface of drink.  
\_\_\_\_\_

## TEST (UNIT 5)

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

1. A. bottle                      B. one                              C. offee                              D. ot
2. A. morning                      B. yogurt                              C. problem                              D. what
3. A. talk                              B. sausage                              C. salt                              D. cause
4. A. flowr                              B. flower                              C. cow                              D. pork
5. A. noodle                              B. food                              C. cook                              D. soon

II. Choose the word that is a different kind of food to the others.

6. A. apple                              B. banana                              C. egg                              D. grape
7. A. carrot                              B. onion                              C. potato                              D. orange
8. A. bean                              B. pork                              C. beef                              D. chicken
9. A. pear                              B. melon                              C. peach                              D. salad
10. A. yoghurt                              B. tea                              C. butter                              D. cheese

III. Choose the correct answers.

11. Can you tell me \_\_\_\_\_ this dish?  
A. to cook                              B. how to cook                              C. cooking                              D. how to cooking

12. What \_\_\_\_\_ do I need to cook an omelette?  
 A. food                      B. material                      C. menu                      D. ingredients
13. In Viet Nam, spring rolls are served \_\_\_\_\_ at a family gathering or anniversary dinner.  
 A. most                      B. almost                      C. mostly                      D. most of
14. "What is your \_\_\_\_\_ dish for breakfast?" – "It's beef noodle soup."  
 A. favourite                      B. most                      C. best                      D. liking
15. How many \_\_\_\_\_ do you eat every day?  
 A. orange                      B. milk                      C. apple                      D. apples
16. Cakes in Viet Nam are made \_\_\_\_\_ butter, eggs, and flour.  
 A. in                      B. from                      C. of                      D. by
17. Lan's brother is a \_\_\_\_\_, working at the Metropolitan Restaurant.  
 A. cooker                      B. cooking                      C. chief                      D. chef
18. What \_\_\_\_\_ drink do you like most?  
 A. nation                      B. foreign                      C. foreigner                      D. favourite
19. "Do you want to \_\_\_\_\_ this new dish of noodle I have just cooked?"  
 A. like                      B. try                      C. drink                      D. make
20. The eel soup that your father has just cooked tastes very \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. well                      B. best                      C. healthy                      D. delicious
21. There isn't \_\_\_\_\_ for dinner, so I have to go to the market.  
 A. some left                      B. any leaning                      C. some leaving                      D. any left
22. A \_\_\_\_\_ is a small meal that you eat when you are in a hurry.  
 A. snack                      B. fast food                      C. breakfast                      D. lunch
23. \_\_\_\_\_ is hot food that is quick to cook, and is served very quickly in a restaurant.  
 A. Hot food                      B. Fast food                      C. Sandwiches                      D. Hamburgers
24. \_\_\_\_\_ water should I put into the glass?  
 A. How                      B. How much                      C. How many                      D. What
25. \_\_\_\_\_ tomatoes do you need to make the sauce?  
 A. How much                      B. How many                      C. How long                      D. How often
26. \_\_\_\_\_ bottles of milk does your family need for a week?  
 A. How much                      B. How many                      C. How                      D. How often
27. How many \_\_\_\_\_ do you want?  
 A. orange juice                      B. bottle of orange juice  
 C. jar of orange juice                      D. cartons of orange juice
28. Is there any butter \_\_\_\_\_ in the refrigerator?  
 A. leave                      B. to leave                      C. to leaving                      D. left
29. There is \_\_\_\_\_ tofu, but there aren't \_\_\_\_\_ sandwiches.  
 A. some – some                      B. any – any                      C. some – any                      D. any – some
30. How many \_\_\_\_\_ do you need?  
 A. yogurt                      B. packet of yogurt  
 C. carton of yogurt                      D. cartons of yogurt

**IV. Fill in each blank with *some* or *any*.**

31. There's \_\_\_\_\_ milk in that bottle.
32. She wanted \_\_\_\_\_ stamps but there weren't \_\_\_\_\_ in the machine.
33. I'm afraid there isn't \_\_\_\_\_ coffee left.
34. I'd like to buy \_\_\_\_\_ new clothes but I don't have \_\_\_\_\_ money.
35. Do you have \_\_\_\_\_ friends in Ha Noi?

**V. Make questions with "*How many/ much*" for the underlined part in the following sentences.**

36. I have only a little luggage.  
\_\_\_\_\_
37. I need some paper to write on.  
\_\_\_\_\_
38. My father often reads two papers a day.  
\_\_\_\_\_
39. I usually drink two litres of water every day.  
\_\_\_\_\_
40. I need some bread to make sandwiches.  
\_\_\_\_\_

**VI. Fill in each blank with ONE suitable word.**

41. We haven't got any food \_\_\_\_\_ for dinner. Let's eat out.
42. This morning, I didn't have \_\_\_\_\_ cup of coffee as usual.
43. You will get \_\_\_\_\_ if you eat so much butter.
44. Fast food is not good \_\_\_\_\_ your health.
45. How \_\_\_\_\_ cooking oil do you need to fry the fish?
46. Is that all, madam? Would you like to buy anything \_\_\_\_\_?
47. Viet Nam has many \_\_\_\_\_ of sweet soup, cakes and noodles.
48. People in our hometown often have rice \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of fresh vegetables, seafood and various kinds of meat.
49. Having a bowl of beef noodle soup for breakfast is very tasty and \_\_\_\_\_.
50. There isn't \_\_\_\_\_ yogurt in the carton.

**VII. Choose sentences (A-J) to complete the following conversation.**

- Nam:** What do we need to cook eel soup for four family members?
- Mai:** (51) \_\_\_\_\_
- Nam:** Can you tell me how to cook eel soup, please? What should I do first?
- Mai:** (52) \_\_\_\_\_
- Nam:** What should I do when the rice soup is ready?
- Mai:** (53) \_\_\_\_\_
- Nam:** What should I do with the eel?
- Mai:** (54) \_\_\_\_\_
- Nam:** OK, and after that?
- Mai:** (55) \_\_\_\_\_
- Nam:** What should I do when the eel is cooked?
- Mai:** (56) \_\_\_\_\_

**Nam:** What should I do at last?

**Mai:** (57) \_\_\_\_\_

**Nam:** How can we serve the eel soup?

**Mai:** (58) \_\_\_\_\_

**Nam:** (59) \_\_\_\_\_

**Mai:** (60) \_\_\_\_\_

- A. First, clean rice, pour into the pot and cook until it's well done, add a little salt.
- B. We need 300 grams of eel, 150 grams of rice, fish sauce, ginger, and green onion.
- C. Thank you very much. Your instructions are very clear.
- D. Finally, when rice is well done, add meat eel into the pot, put the fish sauce, sugar, and pepper to suit your taste.
- E. Clean the eel carefully: first use water of lemon, apply it on the body of the eel and rub it.
- F. I suggest you should eat when it is hot. Add some sliced green onion on the surface of the dish.
- G. After steam, separate meat and bone eel carefully. Use the meat only.
- H. You're welcome. I hope your eel soup will be the best.
- I. Next, you clean green onion, ginger and then smash the ginger.
- J. After that, put the eel in a plate and steam it until it's cooked.

**VIII. Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill each blank in the following text.**

Vietnamese people may (61)\_\_\_\_\_ to drink at coffee shops or pubs on weekdays (62)\_\_\_\_\_ their friends after work. Some of them invite their friends to drink at their homes on weekends. In the past, the Vietnamese usually (63)\_\_\_\_\_ home-made alcohol such as "ruou gao" or "ruou de". Then, they started to drink beer or imported wines.

Vietnamese people know about the damage of drinking alcohol, but they still drink. More Vietnamese people (64)\_\_\_\_\_ their free time outside their homes such as cinemas, theatres or coffee shops. The number of places for entertainment has increased in big cities. However, more young people use their free time to study or attend clubs or centres for improving (65)\_\_\_\_\_ such as communications, presentation and team working.

- |     |              |             |               |            |
|-----|--------------|-------------|---------------|------------|
| 61. | A. go        | B. go out   | C. go on      | D. go away |
| 62. | A. for       | B. of       | C. with       | D. to      |
| 63. | A. drink     | B. drinking | C. to drink   | D. drank   |
| 64. | A. spend     | B. take     | C. come       | D. waste   |
| 65. | A. knowledge | B. skills   | C. experience | D. memory  |

**IX. Read the passage, and then answer the questions.**

***Eating habits in Viet Nam***

Meals in Viet Nam – lunch or dinner – must include rice. Traditionally, Vietnamese meals are prepared by wives or mothers and the whole family is expected to eat. However, families now may have only one meal a day at home, and it may not include all the family members.

Tastes, cooking methods and dishes are different between the three regions: the North, the Central, and the South. Nowadays, these differences have become small.

When families do not have time to prepare meals, they eat out. Employees have lunch somewhere nearby the work places.

Since Viet Nam opened its doors to foreign investors, more foreigners have stayed and worked in Viet Nam. As a result, more foreign restaurants have been opened in Viet Nam, especially in big cities.

Young people in Viet Nam now like fast food because of its conveniences. Vietnamese food fast shops have been opened, and the most successful Vietnamese fast food chain is Pho 24. In recent years, there have been more Vietnamese fast food chains such as Bun Bo Hue 3A3.

66. What do meals in Viet Nam usually include?

---

67. When have more foreign restaurants been opened in Viet Nam?

---

68. Why do young people in Viet Nam like fast food?

---

69. Where do most employees have lunch?

---

70. What is the most successful Vietnamese fast food chain?

---

**X. Write a paragraph about eating habits in your area/ city/ village. Use the cues given below.**

71. People/ my town/ have/ three meals/ day/ breakfast, lunch, and dinner.

---

72. They/ have/ breakfast/ 7 o'clock/ morning/

---

73. It/ a light meal/ but/ it/ considered/ important/ with/ a bowl of beef noodle soup (*pho*)/ noodles with pork (*hu tieu*), instant noodle/ a plate of sticky rice (*xoi*).

---

74. Lunch/ usually start/ 11.30/ also a light meal/ followed/ an hour's rest.

---

75. Most employees/ have/ lunch/ food shops/ near/ working places.

---

76. Students/ have/ lunch/ school canteens.

---

77. People/ often have/ rice/ meat/ fish/ vegetables/ but young people/ often/ fast food/ shops/ Lotteria, Jollibee, and KFC.

---

78. Dinner/ main meal/ including rice/ with many dishes/ meat/ fish/ eggs/ tofu/ vegetables.

---

79. People/ prepare/ food/ boiling/ steaming/ barbecuing/ frying/ then/ fruit/ green tea.

---

80. I/ think/ Vietnamese food/ cheap/ nutritious/ very delicious.

---

**A. PHONETICS**

**I. Read aloud these words, according to their groups.**

/tʃ/    check                      chease                      child                      lunch                      watch  
 /dʒ/    jacket                      jeans                      Japanese                      juice                      jump

**II. Underline the /tʃ/ sounds, and put a circle the /dʒ/ sounds, and then read the sentences aloud.**

1. Can I have a chicken sandwich and an apple juice, please?
2. John was wearing a jacket and jeans.
3. I went by coach to Ha Noi and then had lunch.
4. Jump out of the car! Now jog three times round the park!

**III. Put the word into the correct column according the underlined part.**

<i>literature</i>	<i>passenger</i>	<i>luggage</i>	<i>stranger</i>	<i>Japan</i>
<i>journey</i>	<i>coach</i>	<i>lecture</i>	<i>question</i>	<i>January</i>
<i>choose</i>	<i>feature</i>	<i>juice</i>	<i>arrange</i>	<i>culture</i>
<i>charitable</i>	<i>fragile</i>	<i>junk</i>	<i>sandwich</i>	<i>sausage</i>
<i>beach</i>	<i>sculpture</i>	<i>statue</i>	<i>heritage</i>	<i>vegetarian</i>

/tʃ/	/dʒ/

**B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR**

**I. Imagine that you are going to take a trip to Sa Pa in winter and to Mui Ne in summer. Choose the items from the box you would like to take with you. Maybe some items should be used in both places.**

<i>mineral water</i>	<i>blanket</i>	<i>compass</i>	<i>canned food</i>	<i>warm clothes</i>
<i>mobile phone</i>	<i>tent</i>	<i>camera</i>	<i>ball</i>	<i>suntan lotion</i>
<i>swim suit</i>	<i>hat/ cap</i>	<i>scarf</i>	<i>boots</i>	<i>brochure</i>
<i>umbrella</i>	<i>matches</i>	<i>torch</i>	<i>towel</i>	<i>medicines</i>



Sa Pa: \_\_\_\_\_

Mui Ne: \_\_\_\_\_

**II. Fill in each blank with ONE suitable word.**

1. The students of the Imperial Academy were \_\_\_\_\_.
2. When you come to Ha Noi, don't forget to buy \_\_\_\_\_ in local markets.
3. The first Doctors' stone tablets were \_\_\_\_\_ in 1484.
4. Ha Noi's Old \_\_\_\_\_ which has 36 old streets is a tourist attraction.
5. The \_\_\_\_\_ of Minh Mang Tomb was completed in 1843.
6. Tickets are sold at the gate of the tourist \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Tourists can see many beautiful Cham \_\_\_\_\_ in Ninh Thuan Province.
8. The Imperial Academy, the first university in Viet Nam, was used to \_\_\_\_\_ young men for the nation.
9. Ha Long Bay is \_\_\_\_\_ as a spectacular natural wonder.
10. The Dai La Citadel was \_\_\_\_\_ Thang Long (and now Ha Noi) by Emperor Ly Thai To.

**III. Supply the correct passive form of the verbs in brackets.**

1. America (discover) \_\_\_\_\_ by Christopher Columbus.
2. Sydney Opera House in Australia (finish) \_\_\_\_\_ in 1973.
3. The Great Wall in China (build) \_\_\_\_\_ many centuries ago.
4. The Golden Gate Bridge in San Francisco (complete) \_\_\_\_\_ in 1937.
5. Burj Khalifa in Dubai, the highest building in the world, (open) \_\_\_\_\_ in 2010.
6. A painting by Picasso (sell) \_\_\_\_\_ for 3 million dollars last year.
7. The Japanese Covered Bridge in Hoi An (build) \_\_\_\_\_ in the 16<sup>th</sup> century.
8. The Imperial Academy (consider) \_\_\_\_\_ the first university in Viet Nam.
9. The site for Huong Pagoda (discover) \_\_\_\_\_ about 2000 years ago.
10. One-Pillar Pagoda in Ha Noi (complete) \_\_\_\_\_ in 1049.

**IV. Make passive sentences, using the cues given.**

1. kangaroos/ find/ Australia. \_\_\_\_\_
2. English/ speak/ many countries/ world. \_\_\_\_\_
3. rice/ grow/ mostly/ Asia. \_\_\_\_\_
4. coffee/ make/ Brazil. \_\_\_\_\_
5. carnival/ hold/ Brazil/ every year. \_\_\_\_\_
6. baseball/ play/ all over the USA. \_\_\_\_\_

**V. Rewrite the sentences in the passive voice.**

1. People use computers all over the world.  
Computers \_\_\_\_\_.
2. They keep many ancient things in museums.  
Many ancient things \_\_\_\_\_.
3. I do all my homework on my computer.  
All my homework \_\_\_\_\_.
4. People make many famous films in Hollywood.  
Many famous films \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Ms Linh teaches our English lessons.  
Our English lessons \_\_\_\_\_.
6. My father drives all of us to school every day.  
All of us \_\_\_\_\_.
7. A lot of people use cell phones.  
Cell phones \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Hundreds of tourists visit my town every year.  
My town \_\_\_\_\_.
9. People use Khue Van Pavilion symbol on all street signs of Ha Noi.  
Khue Van Pavilion symbol \_\_\_\_\_.
10. King Ly Nhan Tong built the Imperial Academy as the first university in Viet Nam in 1076.  
The Imperial Academy \_\_\_\_\_.

**C. SPEAKING**

**I. Use the cues given to complete the conversation about Hoi An.**

*Hoi An Ancient Town*

- Location: 30 km south of Da Nang
- Ancient seaport in the 16<sup>th</sup> century
- Tourist attractions: narrow streets, old pagodas, old houses of Chinese and Japanese styles
- UNESCO World Heritage in 1999

A: Where is Hoi An?

B: \_\_\_\_\_

A: Why is it called an ancient town?

B: \_\_\_\_\_

A: What can we see in Hoi An?

B: \_\_\_\_\_

A: What is Hoi An considered?

B: \_\_\_\_\_

**II. Complete the conversation about a short visit to the Temple of Literature in Ha Noi, using the information given.**

**Location:** 10 minutes away from Hoan Kiem Lake by bus

**Address:** 58 Quoc Tu Giam Street, Dong Da District, Hanoi.

**History:** built in 1070

**What to see:**

- five courtyards after going through the main gate
- Khue Van Pavilion in the second courtyard
- the Doctors' stone tablets in the third courtyard
- Thai Hoc House in the last courtyard, used as the Imperial Academy

**Opening hours:** 8.30am – 11.30am and 1.30pm – 4.30pm every day except Monday and national holidays

**Tickets:** 10,000 VND/ ticket

**A:** How far is it from Hoan Kiem Lake to the Temple of Literature?

**B:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** What is its address?

**B:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** When was it built?

**B:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** What can I see when I go through the main gate?

**B:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** Where is Khue Van Pavilion?

**B:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** Where can I see the Doctors' stone tablets?

**B:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** And where is the Imperial Academy?

**B:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** What are the opening hours of the Temple of Literature?

**B:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** How much is the ticket?

**B:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** Thank you very much.

**B:** You're welcome.

**D. READING**

**I. Read the passage, and then decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).**

UNESCO has recognized the 82 Doctors' stone tablets as a Memory of the World. They are inscribed with the names of 2,313 doctorate holders who passed the royal examinations between 1442 and 1780. The stone tablets, which bear the names of Trang Nguyen, Bang

Nhan, Tham Hoa, and Hoang Giap (the first, second, third and fourth winning categories at the royal examinations), sit on the backs of stone turtles.

These stone tablets are different from those in other Asian countries, including China which had influenced Vietnamese feudal education. The decorations on Viet Nam's stone tablets were more diverse.

By naming Viet Nam's stone tablets as a Memory of the World, UNESCO also acknowledges Viet Nam's efforts to preserve and promote heritage to international community. The recognition would also help to raise the awareness in heritage preservation.

	<b>True</b>	<b>False</b>
1. UNESCO has recognized the 82 Doctors' stone tablets as the World Heritage.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2. The stone tablets are inscribed with the names of more than 2300 Doctors who passed the royal examinations throughout its history.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3. The stone tablets in the Temple of Literature in Ha Noi are unique because they are different from those in other Asian countries.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4. Viet Nam has made a lot of efforts to preserve and promote its heritage.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5. The recognition of UNESCO helps to make people more aware of the need of heritage preservation.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

**II. Read the passage about the Temple of Literature, and then answer the questions.**

The Temple of Literature is about 10 minutes away from Hoan Kiem Lake. It was constructed in 1070 under Ly Thanh Tong's dynasty, first to honor Confucius and nowadays to celebrate the doctorates and high rank scholars of Vietnam. In 1076, Emperor Ly Nhan Tong continued the work and built the Imperial Academy as the first university of Vietnam.

The temple is divided into five courtyards. The first courtyard is from the main gate to Dai Trung Gate. The second is with Khue Van Pavilion. The pavilion symbol is used on all street signs of Ha Noi. The third courtyard is the place where doctorate names were listed on the stone tablets above tortoise backs. The fourth courtyard is dedicated for Confucius and his 72 honoured students, as well as Chu Van An – one of the most famous teachers at the Imperial Academy. The last is also the farthest courtyard is Thai Hoc House, which was used as the Imperial Academy. Thai Hoc House holds a small collection of old-time costumes for students and scholars.

1. Where is the Temple of Literature?  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. When and by whom was it built?  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. How many courtyards are there in the Temple of Literature?  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Which courtyard has Khue Van Pavilion?  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. What is the Khue Van Pavilion symbol used for?  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Where can we find stone tablets above tortoise backs with the names of doctors?  
\_\_\_\_\_

7. What is the fourth courtyard dedicated for?

8. Where is the Thai Hoc House?

9. What was used as the Imperial Academy?

10. What does the Thai Hoc House hold nowadays?

### III. Read the passage about the royal examinations, and then answer the questions.

The practice of holding royal examinations to select talented people for administration began in 1075. It continued throughout the Le dynasty and up to 1919 when the Nguyen dynasty held the last examination. For more than 300 years, royal examinations had been irregularly, and the number of laureates for each exam was small. In 1434, Emperor Le Thai Tong ordered that examinations should be held regularly, once every three years. From 1442, laureates of a royal examination were awarded the title "*Tien si*" (Doctoral laureate), and one stone tablet was erected for each examination. From 1484 to 1780, 82 stone tablets were erected to record the names of 1304 *Tien si*.

1. When did the practice of holding Royal examinations begin? When did it end?

2. How long did the royal examinations last?

3. Who ordered that the royal examinations should be held regularly? When did it happen?

4. Which title were the laureates of a royal examination awarded?

5. How many stone tablets were erected from 1484 to 1780?

### E. WRITING

Write a report about how to make a trip to the Temple of Literature and the Imperial Academy, using the cues given.

**Location:** 10 minutes away from Hoan Kiem Lake by bus

**Address:** 58 Quoc Tu Giam Street, Dong Da District, Hanoi.

**What to see:**

- five courtyards after going through the main gate
- Khue Van Pavilion in the second courtyard
- the Doctors' stone tablets in the third courtyard
- Thai Hoc House in the last courtyard, used as the Imperial Academy.

**Opening hours:** 8.30am – 11.30am and 1.30pm – 4.30pm every day except Monday and national holidays

**Tickets:** 10,000 VND/ ticket

1. The Temple of Literature and the Imperial Academy is about \_\_\_\_\_

2. It is located at \_\_\_\_\_
3. When you enter the main gate, you can see \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
4. The Temple of Literature opens at \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
5. The ticket costs \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_

## TEST (UNIT 6)

### I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

- |                  |              |                |            |
|------------------|--------------|----------------|------------|
| 1. A. sandwich   | B. chicken   | C. children    | D. chilli  |
| 2. A. literature | B. culture   | C. feature     | D. chapter |
| 3. A. cheese     | B. architect | C. chair       | D. child   |
| 4. A. academy    | B. imperial  | C. advance     | D. around  |
| 5. A. tablet     | B. emperor   | C. recognition | D. temple  |

### II. Find which word does not belong to each group.

- |                   |              |             |                |
|-------------------|--------------|-------------|----------------|
| 6. A. tutor       | B. temple    | C. pavilion | D. pagoda      |
| 7. A. professor   | B. lecturer  | C. teacher  | D. college     |
| 8. A. teach       | B. study     | C. learn    | D. locate      |
| 9. A. found       | B. establish | C. form     | D. find        |
| 10. A. university | B. college   | C. village  | D. high school |

### III. Choose the correct answers.

11. The Temple of Literature \_\_\_\_\_ in 1070.  
 A. find                      B. found                      C. was found                      D. was founded
12. The Imperial Academy was \_\_\_\_\_ in 1076 under Emperor Ly Nhan Tong.  
 A. build                      B. construct                      C. constructed                      D. constructing
13. The Imperial Academy was regarded \_\_\_\_\_ the first university in Viet Nam.  
 A. to                      B. as                      C. for                      D. of
14. The students of the Imperial Academy \_\_\_\_\_ from local examinations all over the country.  
 A. selected                      B. was selected                      C. were selected                      D. selecting
15. The students at the Imperial Academy were carefully \_\_\_\_\_ for the National examinations first, and then the Royal examinations.  
 A. studied                      B. prepared                      C. learned                      D. taken
16. The Imperial Academy was \_\_\_\_\_ young men for the country.  
 A. use to educate                      B. used of educating  
 C. used to educating                      D. used to educate

17. Students at Oxford University \_\_\_\_\_ by famous lecturers and tutors in many departments.  
A. teach and support                      B. taught and supported  
C. are taught and supported              D. are taught to support
18. Bach Ma National Park \_\_\_\_\_ close to the sea.  
A. locates              B. located              C. is located              D. is being located
19. Tan Ky House in Hoi An \_\_\_\_\_ over two hundred years ago.  
A. build              B. is built              C. is to build              D. was built
20. Oxford University \_\_\_\_\_ the oldest university in the English speaking world.  
A. is considered being                      B. is regarded  
C. considered to be                      D. is regarded as
21. Many kinds of fruits and vegetables \_\_\_\_\_ at the floating market in Can Tho.  
A. sell              B. are sold              C. are selling              D. will sell
22. Many precious relics \_\_\_\_\_ in the Temple of Literature.  
A. keep              B. is kept              C. kept              D. are kept
23. In 2010, the 82 Doctors' stone tablets \_\_\_\_\_ as a Memory of the World.  
A. recognised              B. are recognised              C. recognising              D. were recognised
24. The first Doctors' stone tablets \_\_\_\_\_ in 1484.  
A. were erected              B. was erected              C. are erected              D. erected
25. The Temple of Literature \_\_\_\_\_ by old trees and \_\_\_\_\_ many interesting things.  
A. surrounds – contains                      B. is surrounded – is contained  
C. is surrounded – contains                      D. surrounds – is contained
26. In 2003, four \_\_\_\_\_ of Emperor Ly Thanh Tong, Emperor Ly Nhan Tong, Emperor Le Thanh Tong and Chu Van An were built in the Temple of Literature.  
A. stone tablets              B. photos              C. statues              D. forms
27. Papers at the Royal examinations in the past were \_\_\_\_\_ by the King.  
A. passed              B. graded              C. correct              D. check
28. A lot of flowers \_\_\_\_\_ in Da Lat throughout the year.  
A. grow              B. grew              C. growing              D. are grown
29. Minh Mang Tomb \_\_\_\_\_ constructing in 1841, and \_\_\_\_\_ three years later.  
A. started – completed                      B. was started – completed  
C. started – was completed                      D. was started – was completed
30. Many beautiful Cham Towers in Ninh Thuan Province \_\_\_\_\_ and now \_\_\_\_\_ many domestic and foreign tourists.  
A. restored -- attracted                      B. was restored – attracted  
C. were restored – attract                      D. restored – were attracted

**IV. Put the verbs in brackets in the correct verb forms.**

31. Some flowers \_\_\_\_\_ for his mother on her birthday yesterday. (buy)  
32. A new high school \_\_\_\_\_ in our town next year. (build)  
33. Tickets for the football match \_\_\_\_\_ at the ticket booth. (sell)

34. Huong Pagoda Festival \_\_\_\_\_ by thousands of tourists during the first three months of the Lunar Year. (visit)
35. Our school \_\_\_\_\_ after a great scholar of our country – Le Quy Don. (name)
36. My Son Sanctuary \_\_\_\_\_ in Duy Xuyen District, Quang Nam Province. (locate)
37. The students in that university \_\_\_\_\_ by famous professors and lecturers. (teach)
38. The first Doctors' stone tablets \_\_\_\_\_ by King Le Thanh Tong. (erect)
39. The students of the Imperial Academy \_\_\_\_\_ carefully from local examinations all over the country. (select)
40. Harvard \_\_\_\_\_ the oldest university in the USA. (consider)

**V. Fill in each blank with ONE suitable word.**

41. Hoan Kiem Lake is \_\_\_\_\_ in the centre of Ha Noi.
42. Many famous schools are \_\_\_\_\_ after Chu Van An – one of the most famous teachers at the Imperial Academy.
43. One stone tablet was erected on the \_\_\_\_\_ of the tortoise after each Royal examination.
44. The \_\_\_\_\_ why we will visit the Imperial Academy is that it is the first university in Viet Nam.
45. Khleang Pagoda in Soc Trang was made \_\_\_\_\_ wood in 1533.

**VI. Complete the conversation about asking for information about Hung Kings' Temple Festival, using the cues given.**

***Hung Kings' Temple Festival***

**Location:** on Nghia Linh Mountain, Phong Chau District, Phu Tho Province

**Time:** 3 days, from the 9<sup>th</sup> to the 11<sup>th</sup> of the 3<sup>rd</sup> lunar month

**Purpose:** to worship the Hung Kings, founders of the nation

**The worship service:**

- on the second day (the 10<sup>th</sup> of the 3<sup>rd</sup> lunar month)
- start with a flower ceremony by state representatives
- held in Thuong Temple

**Visitors:** people from all over Viet Nam

**What to do:** take part in many cultural activities

**Purposes of the cultural activities:**

- a sacred trip back to the origins of the Vietnamese culture
- to express the love and pride in the homeland and its ancestors

**Distance from Ha Noi:** 70 km

**Transportation:** by coach

**A:** Can I ask you some information about Hung Kings' Temple Festival?

**B:** Of course. What would you like to know?

**A:** Where is the Hung Kings' Temple?



B: (46) \_\_\_\_\_

A: When does the festival start? How long is it?

B: (47) \_\_\_\_\_

A: What is the festival held for?

B: (48) \_\_\_\_\_

A: How about the worship service? When does it happen?

B: (49) \_\_\_\_\_

A: What activity starts the festival service?

B: (50) \_\_\_\_\_

A: Where is it held?

B: (51) \_\_\_\_\_

A: Who comes to the Hung Kings' Temple Festival?

B: (52) \_\_\_\_\_

A: What can we do there?

B: (53) \_\_\_\_\_

A: What is the purpose of these cultural activities?

B: (54) \_\_\_\_\_

A: How far is it from Ha Noi to Hung Kings' Temple? How can we travel there?

B: (55) \_\_\_\_\_

A: Thank you so much. I'll go there this year.

B: You're welcome. I hope you'll have an interesting trip.

**VII. Read the passage, and then decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).**

Chu Van An was born in 1292 and died in 1370. From his childhood, he was famous for his intelligence. He did not have the dream of taking part in exams to become mandarins like other students. Chu Van An stayed at home and taught himself by reading books, and opened schools. His school quickly became famous in the region and many students from other places went there to study.

Emperor Tran Minh Tong invited Chu Van An to be the principal of the Imperial Academy to teach his crown prince and other students to become talented people for the country. In 1359, Emperor Tran Minh Tong gave his crown to his son, Tran Hien Tong, who was also a student of Chu Van An. Under the regime of Emperor Tran Hien Tong, the court and the country were peaceful. However, this period lasted only for 12 years. Then Emperor Tran Hien Tong died, and Tran Du Tong inherited the crown. The social situation became complicated, the people were very poor and hard and many good people were killed.

Chu Van An bravely submitted a petition which requested the Emperor to behead 7 perfidious mandarins, so it was called "Seven Beheaded Petition" (That Tram So). "Seven Beheaded Petition" became the symbol of the courageous attitude of the real intellectuals, and of Chu Van An's spirit.

	<b>True</b>	<b>False</b>
56. Chu Van An was very intelligent and was taught by many good teachers.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
57. He opened a school and it quickly became famous.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
58. Chu Van An was invited to become the principal of the Imperial Academy by Emperor Tran Hien Tong.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
59. Emperor Tran Hien Tong was also Chu Van An's student.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
60. Chu Van An was famous for "Seven Beheaded Petition", a symbol of the courageous attitude of the real intellectuals.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

**VIII. Read the passage carefully, and then answer the questions.**

***Hue Temple of Literature***

In Hue, the Temple of Literature is located on the bank of the Huong River, to the west of the Citadel, just 1 kilometer from Linh Mu Pagoda.

Hue Temple of Literature was built in 1908 during the reign of Emperor Gia Long, on the top of a hill. Over the years afterwards, the temple has gone through several major restoration works.

The remaining of the complex consists of about 50 architectural works, the biggest of which is the worshipping hall of Confucius.

After going past the main gate, we would see several small houses where kings and mandarins would stop by to prepare their costumes before going inside to attend the ceremony. At the front there are two rows of 32 stone tablets bearing the names of 239 successful candidates in National Examinations organized through the Nguyen Dynasty. Although the monument has been damaged during the war, the main temple and especially the Doctors' stone tablets still remain.

Today, people visiting the Temple of Literature can see a unique symbol of Vietnam educational system during the feudal times.

61. Where is Hue Temple of Literature?

62. When and by whom was it built?

63. What is the biggest architectural work in Hue Temple of Literature?

64. How many stone tablets are there? And how many names do they hold?

65. What is the importance of Hue Temple of Literature?

66. People will plant more trees and plants in the park.

More \_\_\_\_\_.

67. King Le Thanh Tong ordered to erect the first Doctors' stone tablets.

The erection of \_\_\_\_\_.

68. They have sold out the tickets for the football match between Viet Nam and Thailand.

The tickets \_\_\_\_\_.

69. People have restored many old houses in Hoi An.

Many old houses \_\_\_\_\_.

70. People chose Khue Van Pavilion as the symbol of Ha Noi.

Khue Van Pavilion \_\_\_\_\_.

**X. Write the sentences about the Temple of Literature and the Imperial Academy, using the cues given.**

71. Temple of Literature/ built/ 1070/ at the time/ Emperor Ly Nhan Tong.

\_\_\_\_\_

72. In 1076/ Imperial Academy/ Vietnam's first national university/ built/ within/ Temple of Literature.

\_\_\_\_\_

73. It/ a learning centre/ teach/ Vietnam's mandarin class.

\_\_\_\_\_

74. The university/ function/ more than 700 years/ 1076-1779.

\_\_\_\_\_

75. During that period/ 2,313 doctors/ graduated/ Imperial Academy.

\_\_\_\_\_

76. There/ 82 stone tablets/ names and origins/ 1307 doctors/ corresponding to/ 82 royal examinations/ 1442- 1779.

\_\_\_\_\_

77. Emperor Tran Minh Tong/ invite/ Chu Van An/ the principal/ the Imperial Academy.

\_\_\_\_\_

78. If/ you/ visit/ temple/ beginning of the year/ or/ May/ you/ see/ many students/ come/ rub/ the tortoise heads.

\_\_\_\_\_

79. They/ believe/ it/ bring/ them good luck.

\_\_\_\_\_

80. 2010/ the 82 Doctors' stone tablets/ recognise/ UNESCO/ a Memory/ World.

\_\_\_\_\_

## TEST YOURSELF 2

### I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

1. A. cheap                      B. chicken                      C. children                      D. chef
2. A. wach                              B. cach                              C. architect                      D. mach
3. A. bottle                              B. fork                              C. record                              D. pork
4. A. champion                      B. charity                      C. champagne                      D. choose
5. A. decision                      B. revision                      C. occasion                      D. discussion

### II. Choose the word that is a different kind of food to the others.

6. A. oranges                      B. grapes                      C. apples                      D. carrots
7. A. fish                      B. chicken                      C. hamburgers                      D. rice
8. A. cakes                      B. lemons                      C. chocolate                      D. biscuits
9. A. coffee                      B. milk                      C. tea                      D. noodles
10. A. fish                      B. pork                      C. beef                      D. lamb

### III. Choose the correct answers.

11. Only fresh fish \_\_\_\_\_ in this restaurant.  
A. is serve                      B. is served                      C. is to serve                      D. serves
12. Yesterday she \_\_\_\_\_ a very difficult task to do.  
A. has given                      B. was given                      C. gave                      D. is given
13. "A Complete History of Dai Viet" \_\_\_\_\_ by a number of famous Vietnamese historians from the 15<sup>th</sup> to the 17<sup>th</sup> century.  
A. wrote                      B. is written                      C. was written                      D. were written
14. Ho Chi Minh Mausoleum \_\_\_\_\_ in August, 1975  
A. completes                      B. completed                      C. is completed                      D. was completed
15. The best chocolate \_\_\_\_\_ by Swiss companies.  
A. makes                      B. makes                      C. is made                      D. are made

### IV. Rewrite the sentences so that their meanings stay the same, using the beginning given for each.

16. Lan is 1.40 metres, and I am 1.35 metres.  
I'm not \_\_\_\_\_.
17. Work is very important to me. Family is also important to me.  
Work is \_\_\_\_\_.
18. Rap music is a kind of music, but R&B is quite different.  
R&B is quite \_\_\_\_\_ rap music.
19. The gold watch is €180. The silver watch is €100.  
The silver watch is not \_\_\_\_\_.
20. Playing a musical instrument is difficult, but composing a song is more difficult.  
Playing a musical instrument is not \_\_\_\_\_.

V. Complete the questions with *How much* or *How many*.

- 21. \_\_\_\_\_ water do you drink every day?
- 22. \_\_\_\_\_ cups of coffee does your father drink every day?
- 23. \_\_\_\_\_ red meat do you eat every week?
- 24. \_\_\_\_\_ bread do you eat every day?
- 25. \_\_\_\_\_ vegetables do you eat every day?
- 26. \_\_\_\_\_ hours' sleep do you have every night?
- 27. \_\_\_\_\_ time do you work on a computer every day?
- 28. \_\_\_\_\_ times do you play sport every week?
- 29. \_\_\_\_\_ kilometers do you walk every day?
- 30. \_\_\_\_\_ money have you got with you today?

VI. Complete the conversation with the words in the box.

<i>a</i>	<i>any</i>	<i>many</i>	<i>much</i>	<i>Not really</i>
<i>some</i>	<i>some</i>	<i>the</i>	<i>Oh, dear!</i>	<i>enough</i>

**Linda:** We need to make (31)\_\_\_\_\_ pizzas for the party. Have we got (32)\_\_\_\_\_ mushrooms?

**Nick:** No, we haven't. But we've got (33)\_\_\_\_\_ tomatoes.

**Linda:** Really? How (34)\_\_\_\_\_ tomatoes have we got?

**Nick:** About five. Is that (35)\_\_\_\_\_?

**Linda:** (36)\_\_\_\_\_. Is there (37)\_\_\_\_\_ supermarket near here?

**Nick:** Yes, there is. It's on High Street. And it's open in (38)\_\_\_\_\_ evening.

**Linda:** Great! How (39)\_\_\_\_\_ money have you got?

**Nick:** (40)\_\_\_\_\_. I've only got £2!

VII. Complete the gaps in the conversation with the cues given.

<i>What would you like to drink?</i>	<i>How much is it?</i>
<i>Could I have a salad, please?</i>	<i>Can we have the bill, please?</i>
<i>Would you like some garlic bread with that?</i>	<i>Here you are.</i>
<i>That's four pounds each.</i>	<i>What would you like?</i>
<i>Are you ready to order?</i>	<i>Anything else?</i>

**Waiter:** (41)\_\_\_\_\_

**James:** Yes, we are.

**Waiter:** (42)\_\_\_\_\_

**James:** Something special. We finished our exams today. Special, but cheap! We'd like two beef steaks, please.

**Waiter:** (43)\_\_\_\_\_

**James:** Oh, yes, please. That would be great. I love garlic.

**Waiter:** (44) \_\_\_\_\_

**James:** We'll have three colas, please.

**Waiter:** (45) \_\_\_\_\_

**James:** Not for me, thanks.

**Hannah:** (46) \_\_\_\_\_

**Lucy:** Can I have one, too?

**James:** Oh, right. Sorry. Two salads, please.

*Twenty minutes later....*

**James:** (47) \_\_\_\_\_

**Waiter:** Of, course. (48) \_\_\_\_\_

**Hannah:** (49) \_\_\_\_\_

**James:** Twelve pounds. (50) \_\_\_\_\_

**VIII. Read the text about snacks in Germany, Brazil and Japan. Complete the blanks with a/an, some, any or Ø (no word).**

**Susan (from Germany):** "Well, I often have (51) \_\_\_\_\_ snack at about eleven in the morning. I usually go to a kiosk near here and buy (52) \_\_\_\_\_ sausage, and then I eat it, standing up at a small table near the kiosk. Then at about four o'clock we usually stop work and have (53) \_\_\_\_\_ cup of coffee and (54) \_\_\_\_\_ cakes."

**Renato (from Brazil):** "I don't usually have (55) \_\_\_\_\_ food in the middle of the morning, but in the afternoon, at about five o'clock, I sometimes have a coffee. Yesterday, for example, I had (56) \_\_\_\_\_ loaf of bread and (57) \_\_\_\_\_ cheese. I get very hungry in the afternoons! Oh, yes. and I had (58) \_\_\_\_\_ iced tea. You can buy it at the beach or on the streets – it's very popular in Brazil."

**Mariko (from Japan):** "In Japan we eat food from all over the world, and young people like European snacks. Older people like more traditional food. For example, every afternoon, my grandfather has (59) \_\_\_\_\_ Japanese sweets with traditional green tea. At work, on weekdays we usually have a 'three o'clock snack'. Today I had (60) \_\_\_\_\_ biscuits and tea, but no milk! I find it very strange that English people have milk in their tea!"

**IX. Read the text about the favourite places where the two students often eat out. Then do the tasks that follow.**

**Susan:** "I eat out once a week. My parents usually take me to a Chinese or an Indian restaurant at the weekend. But my favourite place to eat is the Rainforest Café in central London. It looks like a rainforest with wild animals (they're not real!) and the food's great."

**Nick:** "I eat out quite a lot. Once a week I go to a pizza restaurant with my friends and twice a week I go out with my parents. We usually have a Chinese or an Italian meal. But my favourite place to eat is the Hard Rock Café. It has loud music and fantastic photos of my favourite rock singers on the walls."

**A. Read the passage, and then decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).**

	True	False
61. Susan eats out every day.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
62. Susan is usually taken to a Chinese or an Indian restaurant.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
63. Nick never eats out with his friends.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
64. Nick goes out with his parents twice a week.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
65. Nick likes some rock singers.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

**B. Choose the correct answer.**

66. Susan sometimes eats out in \_\_\_\_\_ restaurant.  
A. a Chinese                      B. a Thai                      C. an Italian
67. Susan's favourite restaurant is \_\_\_\_\_ restaurant.  
A. an Indian                      B. a theme                      C. a fast food
68. The Rainforest Café \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. is located in the rain forest  
B. looks like a rainforest and has some wild animals for entertainment  
C. looks like a rainforest and has some models of wildlife
69. Nick eats out \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. three times a week              B. at the weekend              C. once a week
70. Nick likes \_\_\_\_\_ in the restaurant.  
A. the food                      B. the music                      C. the people

**X. Read the passage carefully, and then answer the questions.**

### ***Van Mieu – Quoc Tu Giam (Temple of Literature – Imperial Academy)***

The Temple of Literature was built in 1070 under the reign of Emperor Ly Thanh Tong to honour Confucius and later used as a royal school, where Emperor Ly Nhan Tong studied when he was a five-year-old prince.

The Imperial Academy, which can be considered Vietnam's first university, was built in 1076 next to the temple. Over the next seven centuries and more, the university produced thousands of scholars for the country. Under the reign of Emperor Tran Minh Tong (1314-1329), the teacher Chu Van An, was appointed the school's principal. After his death in 1370, Emperor Tran Nghe Tong (1321 – 1394) had him worshiped beside Confucius at the Temple of Literature. Many schools in Vietnam are also named after Chu Van An.

In 1946, the Imperial Academy in Hanoi was destroyed by French bombing, but gradually restored later.

To enter the main area of the Temple of Literature, visitors must go through three gates. The first gate is called Van Mieu Mon; the second is called Dai Trung Mon and the third, Dai Thanh Mon.

In the space between Dai Trung Mon and Dai Thanh Mon is the one-storey, two-roof pavilion called Khue Van Cac. Behind Khue Van Cac is the Thien Quang Tinh (Well of Heavenly Clarity), on either side of which 41 Doctors' stone tablets stand in two rows. They stand upon stone turtles with the names and birthplaces of successful doctoral candidates from the examinations held at the Imperial Academy from 1484 to 1780.

Now as a major tourist site, the Temple of Literature – Imperial Academy also hosts award ceremonies to recognize outstanding students. An annual poetry festival is held here on the 15th of the first lunar month.

71. What was the Temple of Literature built for?

---

72. What was the Imperial Academy considered?

---

73. What did the Imperial Academy do for the country at that time?

---

74. Who was Chu Van An? Where was he worshiped?

---

75. How many Doctors' stone tablets are there? Where are they?

---

**XI. Make questions to ask your partner, using the words and phrases given.**

76. How/ water/ drink/ every day?

---

77. How/ chocolate/ eat/ every week?

---

78. How/ cola/ drink/ every week?

---

79. How/ brothers and sisters/ have?

---

80. How/ rooms/ be/ there/ in your house (flat)?

---



**A. PHONETICS**

**I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.**

- |                         |                     |                     |                     |
|-------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1. A. <u>h</u> ead      | B. br <u>ea</u> k   | C. br <u>ea</u> d   | D. h <u>ea</u> vy   |
| 2. A. s <u>ai</u> d     | B. w <u>ai</u> t    | C. m <u>ai</u> d    | D. s <u>ai</u> l    |
| 3. A. s <u>ta</u> rt    | B. l <u>a</u> ke    | C. s <u>ta</u> tion | D. c <u>a</u> me    |
| 4. A. <u>a</u> ncient   | B. r <u>a</u> dio   | C. n <u>a</u> ture  | D. v <u>i</u> llage |
| 5. A. indic <u>a</u> te | B. mist <u>a</u> ke | C. t <u>a</u> ke    | D. s <u>a</u> ys    |

**II. Underline the letters with sound /e/, and circle the letters with sound /ei/.**

- There used to be many traffic accidents in this street.
- Mr. Lake takes the train to work every day.
- Betty is walking on the pavement and waving to her friend.
- They came to Spain to visit many stadiums and went around by train.
- They were waiting at the railway station to meet their friends from Spain.

**B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR**

**I. Put the means of transport into the correct groups.**

bicycle (bike)	boat	bus	car	coach	helicopter
lorry	motorbike	plane	moped	ship	taxi
train	tram (streetcar)	underground	van	caravan	kayak

Land	Air	Sea
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____

**II. Put the types of transport into the correct group of the verb. Some types of transport can be used more than once, and used with the article "a" or "the".**

bus	plane	train	taxi	car
helicopter	bike	horse	motorbike	ship

- take: \_\_\_\_\_
- get on: \_\_\_\_\_
- get off: \_\_\_\_\_
- go by: \_\_\_\_\_
- ride: \_\_\_\_\_

III. Match the road signs with their meanings, and then write the correct answers in the blanks.



A



B



D



E



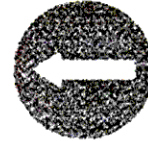
F



G



H



I



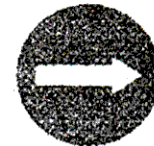
J



K



L



M

- |                          |  |
|--------------------------|--|
| 1. Go ahead only _____   | 7. No Stopping & No Parking _____          |
| 2. Go left only _____    | 8. Overtaking prohibited _____             |
| 3. Go right only _____   | 9. Trucks prohibited _____                 |
| 4. No Parking _____      | 10. All motor vehicles prohibited _____    |
| 5. Cars prohibited _____ | 11. No U-turns _____                       |
| 6. Stop _____            | 12. Overtaking prohibited for trucks _____ |

IV. Look at signs A-F. What do they mean? Underline the correct option.



- A. Motorbikes *don't have to/ can't* go here. They *have to/ don't have to* go on another road.
- B. You *can/ have to* park here for free. You *can't/ don't have to* pay for fifteen minutes parking.
- C. Bikes *have to/ can* keep left. People on foot *don't have to/ can't* walk on the left.
- D. You *can/ can't* catch the bus here. You *have to/ don't have to* wait more than ten minutes.
- E. You *can't/ don't have to* ride your bike. You *can/ have to* get off and walk.
- F. You *can/ can't* take a taxi here. You *can/ can't* park here.

V. Look at the signs, and then do the tasks that follow.



A. Which signs might you see:

- in the street? \_\_\_\_\_
- in a hospital? \_\_\_\_\_
- in a park? \_\_\_\_\_
- in a museum? \_\_\_\_\_
- at an airport? \_\_\_\_\_

B. Complete the sentences with **have to**, **don't have to**, **can** or **can't**, and then match signs **a-m** to the sentences below. Sign **c** has been done for you as an example.

Example: -c- You **have to** stop.

1. Dogs \_\_\_\_\_ go here.
2. You \_\_\_\_\_ ride a bicycle here, but you \_\_\_\_\_ drive your car.
3. You \_\_\_\_\_ pay in the evening or on Sundays.
4. You \_\_\_\_\_ play football here.
5. You \_\_\_\_\_ take photos.
6. Adults and children over five \_\_\_\_\_ pay, but children under five \_\_\_\_\_ pay.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. You \_\_\_\_\_ use this toilet.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. You \_\_\_\_\_ use Visa or Mastercard but you \_\_\_\_\_ use American Express.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. You \_\_\_\_\_ show your passport.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. You \_\_\_\_\_ use a mobile in here.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 11. You \_\_\_\_\_ walk on the paths, not the grass.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 12. You \_\_\_\_\_ smoke in this area.

**VI. Complete the following sentences using a different verb or expression. Don't change the meaning. Number 0 has been done for you as an example.**

0. She never drives to the shops.  
*She never goes to the shops by car.*
1. In bad weather, I take the bus to school.  
In bad weather, I \_\_\_\_\_ to school \_\_\_\_\_.
2. I always walk to my grandparents' house.  
I always \_\_\_\_\_ to my grandparents' house \_\_\_\_\_.
3. I usually go to school by bike.  
I usually \_\_\_\_\_ to school.
4. Do you go to school on foot?  
Do you \_\_\_\_\_ to school?
5. My father usually goes to work by car.  
My father usually \_\_\_\_\_ to work.
6. My mother drives me to the bus station.  
My mother \_\_\_\_\_ me to the bus station by \_\_\_\_\_.

**VII. Complete the sentences with "used to" or "didn't use to".**

1. I \_\_\_\_\_ like sports, but now I do a lot of different sports.
2. I \_\_\_\_\_ be afraid of heights, but then I started climbing hills.
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ like putting my head in the water because I couldn't swim.
4. I \_\_\_\_\_ go skating until I met Anna in Switzerland, and then we have practised a lot so far.
5. I \_\_\_\_\_ go to school on foot, but now I ride a bicycle to school.

**C. SPEAKING**

**I. Read the following conversations: five teenagers are talking about their journeys to school. Complete the table, and then practise asking and answering the three questions about the teenagers.**

- How far is it from his/ her house to the school?
- How does he/ she go to school?
- How long does it take him/ her to go to school?

	Distance	Time
1. David	_____ kilometers	_____ minutes
2. Susan	_____ kilometers	_____ minutes
3. Paul	_____ kilometers	_____ minutes
4. Ann	_____ kilometers	_____ minutes
5. Joe	_____ kilometers	_____ minutes

### 1. David

**Interviewer:** How far do you live from the school?

**David:** About one kilometer.

**Interviewer:** And how do you get to school?

**David:** I usually walk to school.

**Interviewer:** How long does it take?

**David:** About 15 minutes.

### 2. Susan

**Interviewer:** How far do you live from the school?

**Susan:** I live in a village, about six kilometres away.

**Interviewer:** How do you get to school?

**Susan:** My dad drives me to school in the morning. He works near the school. But he finishes work late so I go home by bus.

**Interviewer:** And how long does it take?

**Susan:** About 20 or 25 minutes

### 3. Paul

**Interviewer:** How far is it from your house to your school?

**Paul:** I live just round the corner – about 200 metres.

**Interviewer:** So do you go to school on foot?

**Paul:** Yes, usually. Or sometimes I go by bike.

**Interviewer:** How long does it take you to go to school by bike?

**Paul:** Just two or three minutes.

### 4. Ann

**Interviewer:** How far do you live from the school?

**Ann:** I'm not sure – about two or three kilometres, I think.

**Interviewer:** And how do you get to school?

**Ann:** I take the bus. It stops right outside our blocks of flats.

**Interviewer:** How long does it take?

**Ann:** About twenty minutes.

## 5. Joe

**Interviewer:** How far do you live from the school?

**Joe:** About four kilometres.

**Interviewer:** How do you come to school?

**Joe:** I go by underground.

**Interviewer:** How long does it take?

**Joe:** It takes five minutes to walk to the station, ten minutes on the train, and another five minutes from the station to the school.

## II. Works in pairs. Ask and answer the questions.

1. How far is it from your house to the school? – About \_\_\_\_\_.
2. How do you come/ get/ go to school? – I \_\_\_\_\_.
3. How long does it take? – It \_\_\_\_\_.

## D. READING

### I. Read the following passage about driving laws around the world, and then tick the correct answers: *true* (T), or *false* (F).

In Sweden, it is necessary to keep your headlights on 24 hours a day. We understand that it is required for places as cold as Sweden during winter, but you cannot turn off your car's lights even if it is June and the weather looks just fine.

If you are driving in Beijing and you come across a zebra crossing, don't stop or even try to slow down because this will get you in trouble with the law.

In Thailand, it is compulsory to wear a shirt while driving. Women who go topless while driving can be fined equal to a few hundred baht.

In Cyprus, you should keep both hands on the wheel. Drivers who unnecessarily raise a hand from the steering wheel can get fines, although we think that making some gestures at bad drivers is sometimes good.

Don't yell or curse while you are driving in Rockville, Maryland, USA although you are right. It is illegal to curse in public. You have to pay a fine up to \$100 or go to prison up to 10 days.

Before you drive off with a car in Denmark, you must check that the children in your car have the best places. Maybe the reason is that they can read books by Hans Anderson.

Drinking and driving is illegal in Spain, but in Macedonia, if you are drunk, you cannot sit in the front seats.

- |   | True                     | False                    |
|---|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Use your car's headlights 24 hours a day in Sweden.                                  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2. In Sweden, you have to turn on your car's lights in June when the weather is bad.    | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3. In Beijing, it is against the law to stop at a zebra crossing.                       | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4. In Thailand, you have to wear a shirt while driving.                                 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5. There are no rules about what women have to wear while they are driving in Thailand. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

- |   |                          |                          |
|---|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 6. In Cyprus, you cannot shake your fist (a hand with the fingers and thumb held tightly in) at other drivers.                            | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 7. It is illegal to use bad language while you are driving in Rockville, Maryland, USA.   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 8. If you yell or curse while you are driving in Rockville, Maryland, USA and don't pay the fine, you may be put in prison up to 90 days. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 9. Children can have best places while they are riding in a car in Denmark.   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 10. Don't sit in the front seats if you are drunk in Macedonia, Spain.  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

**II. Read the following text, and then answer the questions.**

***Bike safety***

- Children under 10 should always ride with an adult.
- You must wear an approved cycle helmet correctly.
- Make sure bikes have working brakes.
- Wearing a high visibility vest or jacket, especially at night, is a good idea.
- You should copy the way you see your parents riding their bikes.

1. At which age can children ride their bikes alone?

---

2. What must you wear while riding?

---

3. What should your bike have?

---

4. What should you wear when you ride at night?

---

5. Is the way your parents ride their bikes a good example for you to follow?

---

**III. Read the texts about model good road safety behavior at all times for parents, and then answer the questions.**

**Top tips for pedestrian safety**

- Teach your children to hold hands with an adult whenever they go out.
- Always use a zebra crossing when one is available and teach children that these are the safest places to cross.
- Teach children that it's still important to stop, look and listen at a zebra crossing.
- Teach children always to stop at the kerb and look and listen for traffic (a third of children injured on roads said that they didn't stop before stepping off the kerb and many said they didn't look).
- Never use your mobile phone while crossing roads.
- Children learn to make decisions about crossing the road and parents gradually let them take a lead when you are crossing together.
- As children get older, practise routes with them before they walk alone.

## Top tips for cycling

- Always encourage children to wear a cycle helmet when they are on their bikes, and set a good example by wearing one yourself.
- Children need to be able to judge speed and distance accurately before they cycle on public roads. They need to take lessons on cycling in order to travel more widely on their bikes.
- Make sure children wear bright coloured clothing and fluorescent items whenever they are cycling on the road. And if they are cycling in the dark, they will need lights on their bikes and reflective items too. And of course, make sure you do this yourself, to set a good example.

1. What should children do when they go out?

2. Where should children cross the street?

3. What should children do to cross the street?

4. Where should children stop to look and listen for the traffic?

5. Can they use their mobile phones while crossing roads?

6. What should parents do to help older children before they walk alone?

7. What should children wear when they are on the bikes?

8. What should children do before they cycle on public roads?

9. Which clothes should children wear whenever they are cycling on the road?

10. What should they do when they cycle in the dark?

## E. WRITING

**Make sentences using the words and phrases given.**

1. The traffic/ a nightmare/ visitors/ Viet Nam/ the first time.

2. There/ transport rules/ but/ many people/ not seem/ really interested/ follow/ them.

3. Three or four people/ one motorbike/ a common sight/ particularly/ young people.

4. The traffic/ worst/ rush hours/ when/ everyone/ try/ get to work/ get home quickly.

5. Some people/ ride/ motorbikes/ the pavements/ rather than/ waiting/ a traffic jam.



6. Pedestrians/ get injured/ hit easily/ when/ they/ walk/ the pavements/ cross the roads/ such times.

---

7. Road users/ very impatient/ quite aggressive/ constantly using their horns/ even shouting/ others.

---

8. Some people/ install/ air horn/ their motorbikes/ this/ really annoying/ other people/ sometimes/ it/ cause/ accidents.

---

9. Another problem/ the increase/ the number/ cars/ the road.

---

10. More people/ own/ private cars/ it/ make/ the problem/ the traffic jams/ worse.

---

### TEST (UNIT 7)

I. Look at the road signs. Write the rules beginning with "You can/ can't" or "You have to", using the cues in the box.

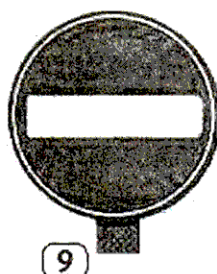
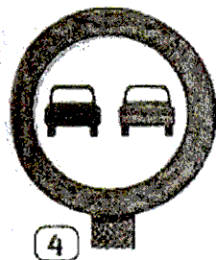
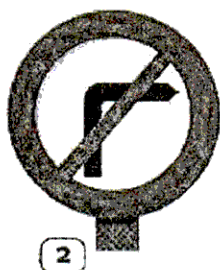
*buy petrol*  
*overtake*

*enter*  
*park*

*give way*  
*stop*

*go*  
*turn left*

*go faster than*  
*turn right*



1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_
10. \_\_\_\_\_

**II. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.**

11. A. lazy                      B. date                      C. hate                      D. car
12. A. said                      B. wait                      C. train                      D. paid
13. A. safety                      B. waste                      C. taste                      D. chat
14. A. security                      B. belt                      C. let                      D. centre
15. A. head                      B. seat                      C. heavy                      D. weather

**III. Choose the correct answers.**

16. \_\_\_\_\_ does it take to go from Ha Noi to Ho Chi Minh City by plane?  
A. How far                      B. How much                      C. How long                      D. How many
17. There \_\_\_\_\_ a bus station in the city centre, but it has been moved to the suburbs.  
A. used to be                      B. used to have                      C. use to have                      D. were
18. I \_\_\_\_\_ marbles when I was young, but now I didn't.  
A. play                      B. used to play                      C. have played                      D. didn't use to play
19. "\_\_\_\_\_ is it from your house to the nearest bus stop?" – "About 50 metres."  
A. How far                      B. How long                      C. How often                      D. How much
20. We should \_\_\_\_\_ the street at the zebra crossing.  
A. walk                      B. walk on                      C. walk through                      D. walk across
21. Drivers have to \_\_\_\_\_ your seatbelt whenever they drive.  
A. put                      B. tie                      C. fasten                      D. put on
22. We should wait for the traffic lights \_\_\_\_\_ before we cross the street.  
A. turn green                      B. to turn green                      C. turn yellow                      D. to turn yellow
23. All of us have to obey \_\_\_\_\_ strictly.  
A. traffic rules                      B. traffic                      C. traffic jam                      D. regular
24. Cyclists and motorists have to wear a \_\_\_\_\_ when they ride a motorbike.  
A. hard hat                      B. cap                      C. mask                      D. helmet
25. He forgot to give a \_\_\_\_\_ before he turned left and got a ticket.  
A. signal                      B. sign                      C. light                      D. hand

**IV. Complete the sentences with the phrases in the box.**

<i>train tickets</i>	<i>railway station</i>	<i>means of transport</i>	<i>traffic jams</i>	<i>road safety</i>
<i>road user</i>	<i>speed limit</i>	<i>driving license</i>	<i>safety helmet</i>	<i>zebra crossing</i>

26. Roadworks have caused \_\_\_\_\_ throughout the city centre.
27. Slow down because you're breaking the \_\_\_\_\_.
28. A \_\_\_\_\_ is a place on a road at which vehicles must stop to allow people to walk across the road.
29. A \_\_\_\_\_ is an official document that shows you are able to drive.
30. We needed to get to Ha Noi, but we had no \_\_\_\_\_.
31. I have two \_\_\_\_\_ available to go to Lao Cai. Would you like to go with me to Sa Pa?
32. The government has introduced a new \_\_\_\_\_ campaign in an attempt to reduce the number of road accidents.
33. We looked on our map to find the way to the \_\_\_\_\_.
34. You should know the regulations in order to become a good \_\_\_\_\_.
35. A \_\_\_\_\_ is a hard hat which covers and protects the whole head, worn especially by motorcyclists.

**V. Read the following passage about driving laws around the world, and then tick the correct answers: *true* (T), or *false* (F).**

***Car safety for children***

Make sure:

- children sit in the back seat
- small children use a child restraint or booster seat that fits them
- everyone is wearing their safety belts and they are fitted correctly
- children get in and out on the footpath side of the car
- children walk with their parents to the school gate in the mornings, and after school children walk with their parents to the car
- take extra care on wet days
- children should only play outdoors in areas protected well from traffic, including driveways
- children need to ask an adult to get the ball that goes onto the road while they are playing

- |  | <b>True</b>              | <b>False</b>             |
|--|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 36. Children should sit in the front seat.   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 37. Small children should have special seats for their own security while riding in a car. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 38. Only children should wear seatbelts when they are on a car.                            | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 39. Make sure that the seatbelts are fitted correctly.                                     | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 40. Children can get in and out from both sides of the car.                                | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

- |  |                          |                          |
|--|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 41. It is for the safety of children that they have to get in and out on the footpath side of the car.   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 42. Parents should walk to the school gate with their children in the mornings.                          | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 43. After school, parents should walk to the school gate to meet your children and walk them to the car. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 44. Children should be more careful when it is a rainy day.  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 45. Children can walk across the street to pick up the ball without help from an adult.                  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

**VI. Read the following passage about driving laws around the world, and then tick the correct answers: *true* (T), or *false* (F).**

- Keep your car clean and shiny if you are in Russia, because driving a dirty car can get you fined up to 2,000 rubles (about \$57).
- In Costa Rica, you can drink beer while driving if you don't get drunk. You can drink beer with one hand and drive your car through the winding roads of Costa Rica.
- Make sure that you have enough fuel in your car tank when you drive in the famous high street in Germany – Autobahn. If you run out of gas, you will break the law.
- Drivers in France are required to carry a breathalyzer kit in their cars. Originally, drivers who didn't have one were required to pay a fine of €11, but this has been delayed.
- If you are not drunk, don't get in a car with a drunk driver. In Japan, sober passengers with a drunk driver can be punished under the law.
- In Cyprus, eating or drinking (even water) while driving is illegal. Eating a quick snack or taking a sip of soda will make you pay an €85 fine.
- Luxembourg is serious about security, and cars are not allowed to drive if they are not equipped with working windshield wipers.
- In Manila, the Philippines, you cannot drive your car on Monday if the number plate ends with 1 or 2.

- |   | <b>True</b>              | <b>False</b>             |
|---|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 46. You are fined when you drive a dirty car in Russia.   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 47. In Costa Rica, you can drink beer while you are driving.  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 48. In Costa Rica, you can drive your car with one hand.  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 49. Don't run out of gas on Germany's Autobahn.   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 50. Bring your own breathalyzer while you are driving in France.                                    | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 51. In France, you will get a fine if you don't bring your own breathalyzer while driving nowadays. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 52. In Japan, make sure that your driver isn't drunk too.   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 53. In Cyprus, drinking but not eating is allowed while you are driving.                            | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 54. Make sure that the windshield wipers of your car work well while driving in Luxembourg.         | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 55. In Manila, your number plate can be a problem too.  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

**VII. Read the text and answer the following questions.**

The streets are crowded with traffic. Taxis are bringing tired people from the airport and the train stations to the hotels. They hope to sleep a few hours before their busy day in the big city. Trucks are bringing fresh fruits and vegetables into the city. Ships are bringing food and fuel to the harbour.

By seven o'clock in the morning, the streets are filled again with people. Millions of people live in the big city, and millions of people who work in the big city live in the suburbs, the commuters, are hurrying to get to their offices. Everyone is in a hurry. Some stop only to drink a cup of coffee. Others stop to buy the morning paper or to have breakfast.

The noise of traffic gets louder. The policemen blow their whistles to stop the traffic or to hurry it along.

56. Where do taxis often take people from?

\_\_\_\_\_

57. What are trucks bringing? And what about ships?

\_\_\_\_\_

58. Who are commuters?

\_\_\_\_\_

59. What do people often do when they are in a hurry in the early morning?

\_\_\_\_\_

60. What do the policemen do to control the traffic?

\_\_\_\_\_

**VIII. Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first.**

61. I usually stayed up late to watch football matches last year, but now I don't.

I used \_\_\_\_\_.

62. There were some trees in the field, but now there aren't any.

There used \_\_\_\_\_.

63. Linda doesn't live with her parents any more.

Linda used \_\_\_\_\_.

64. He is not a poor man any more, but he becomes a rich businessman.

He used \_\_\_\_\_.

65. They didn't often go to the cinema every Sunday last year.

They didn't use \_\_\_\_\_.

66. My hair now is much longer than that in the past.

In the past my hair used \_\_\_\_\_.

67. I don't have time to collect stamps as when I was in primary school.

I used \_\_\_\_\_.

68. Did you often go to the beach when you lived in Nha Trang?

Did you use \_\_\_\_\_?

69. Mr. Nam often went to work by motorbike, but now he goes to work by bus.

Mr. Nam \_\_\_\_\_.

70. There were traffic jams in this street during rush hours, but now the street becomes wider.

There \_\_\_\_\_.

**IX. Write a paragraph about traffic problems and the solutions, using the cues given and the words to show sequence like: *first, second, moreover, in addition, ..., at last.***

71. Most streets/ roads/ our city/ narrow/ in bad conditions.

\_\_\_\_\_

72. Many people/ not strictly follow/ traffic laws/ when using the roads.

\_\_\_\_\_

73. For example/ they/ cross/ street/ wrong places/ ride/ motorbikes/ wrong direction.

\_\_\_\_\_

74. Many street vendors/ occupy/ pavement/ display/ goods/ sale/ pedestrians/ walk/ in the road.

\_\_\_\_\_

75. The number of trucks/ our city/ very big/ so/ they/ interfere/ traffic flow.

\_\_\_\_\_

76. Construction/ houses and buildings/ not carefully planned/ so/ they/ occupy/ surface of the roads.

\_\_\_\_\_

*To solve the traffic problems in our city, we should do many things.*

77. All streets/ be widened/ and traffic lines/ more logical.

\_\_\_\_\_

78. We/ encourage/ people/ use public transport/ their personal vehicles.

\_\_\_\_\_

79. Heavy penalties/ use/ for/ careless/ dangerous drivers. People/ be educated/ traffic regulations/ at the same time.

\_\_\_\_\_

80. In short/ I hope/ traffic problems/ our city/ be solved/ so that/ we/ feel/ comfortable/ when/ use the road.

\_\_\_\_\_

**A. PHONETICS**

Put the words in the correct column according to the pronunciation of the ending *-ed*.

<i>washed</i>	<i>looked</i>	<i>stopped</i>	<i>needed</i>	<i>wanted</i>	<i>decided</i>
<i>volunteered</i>	<i>played</i>	<i>watched</i>	<i>raised</i>	<i>appeared</i>	<i>laughed</i>
<i>moved</i>	<i>fascinated</i>	<i>starred</i>	<i>convinced</i>	<i>shocked</i>	<i>interested</i>

/t/	/d/	/ɪd/
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____

**B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR**

I. Complete the text with the words given in the box.

<i>role</i>	<i>actors</i>	<i>favourite</i>	<i>extras</i>	<i>director</i>	<i>thriller</i>	<i>star</i>	<i>scene</i>
-------------	---------------	------------------	---------------	-----------------	-----------------	-------------	--------------

My (1) \_\_\_\_\_ film this year was *Zero Game*, the latest (2) \_\_\_\_\_ by (3) \_\_\_\_\_ Xi Dong. It has several well-known Chinese (4) \_\_\_\_\_ and one real (5) \_\_\_\_\_, Li Mu Bai, who plays the (6) \_\_\_\_\_ of the policeman who has to catch a thief, Jun Fat. Li Mu Bai is brilliant. In the best (7) \_\_\_\_\_, he chases Jun Fat across the city on a motorbike, watched by thousands of (8) \_\_\_\_\_.

II. Complete the conversation with the words from the box.

<i>animated</i>	<i>cartoon</i>	<i>comedy</i>	<i>kind</i>	<i>much</i>
<i>tickets</i>	<i>look after</i>	<i>problems</i>	<i>lovely</i>	<i>called</i>

**Sam:** What (1) \_\_\_\_\_ of film is *Shaun of the Dead*?  
**Woman:** It's a (2) \_\_\_\_\_. It's very funny, but it's also a horror film and it's very frightening sometimes.  
**Sam:** Oh, I don't mind films that are scary. What other films are on?  
**Woman:** There's *The Princess and the Frog*. It's an (3) \_\_\_\_\_ film from Disney.  
**Sam:** What's it about?  
**Woman:** It's about a princess who lives in New Orleans.

**Sam:** No, I don't want to watch a (4) \_\_\_\_\_.

**Woman:** There's an American film which is very good. It's (5) \_\_\_\_\_ *The Pursuit of Happiness*. A man goes to New York, where he has to (6) \_\_\_\_\_ his son and go to work. He has lots of (7) \_\_\_\_\_, but it's a (8) \_\_\_\_\_ film. *Will Smith* is in it.

**Sam:** OK. Two (9) \_\_\_\_\_, please. How (10) \_\_\_\_\_ is that?

**Woman:** That's \$20.

### III. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the adjectives in brackets.

1. It's a \_\_\_\_\_ book and I'm \_\_\_\_\_ every time I start reading it. (bore)
2. I was very \_\_\_\_\_ in the lesson because our teacher is very \_\_\_\_\_ in history. (interest)
3. We were all very \_\_\_\_\_ about the school trip but it wasn't an \_\_\_\_\_ trip at all. (excite)
4. Studying for exams is very \_\_\_\_\_. I get \_\_\_\_\_ when I open my school books. (tire)
5. My friend is a very \_\_\_\_\_ sort of person but he hates doing \_\_\_\_\_ activities. (relax)

### IV. Complete the conversations with the correct form of the adjectives in brackets.

1. **A:** Was it a good film?  
**B:** No, it wasn't very (interest) \_\_\_\_\_. In fact, it was really (bore) \_\_\_\_\_.
2. **A:** I'm always very (tire) \_\_\_\_\_ after a day at work. I can't do anything in the evening.  
**B:** Why don't you watch a film?  
**A:** I always fall asleep. Sometimes, I put on the most (excite) \_\_\_\_\_ film that I really want to see but I always fall asleep.
3. **A:** I'm an actor. Acting is a very (tire) \_\_\_\_\_ job. It isn't (relax) \_\_\_\_\_ at all. Are you (relax) \_\_\_\_\_?  
**B:** No way. I'm a worker.

### V. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the adjectives in the box.

bore (x 2)	excite	interest	relax	tire
------------	--------	----------	-------	------

1. I'm \_\_\_\_\_. I have nothing to do.
2. "Do you think yoga is \_\_\_\_\_?" – "Oh, yes. It's great. All my problems go after an hour of yoga."
3. I'm \_\_\_\_\_. I didn't sleep last night.
4. The film was \_\_\_\_\_. Nothing happened.
5. Ben was very \_\_\_\_\_ about his birthday presents. He woke up at 5 a.m. and wanted to open them then.
6. This is a very \_\_\_\_\_ book about the history of the cinema. I'm learning a lot.



**VI. Complete the sentences, using *although*, *despite*, *in spite of*, *however*, or *nevertheless*. Sometimes, two answers are possible.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ it was raining heavily, he went out without a raincoat.
2. My father is very busy. \_\_\_\_\_, he is always willing to give a hand with the housework.
3. Some English words have the same pronunciation \_\_\_\_\_ they are spelled differently, for example, *dear* and *deer*.
4. I was cold and wet. \_\_\_\_\_, Bob put on his swimming suit and went to the beach.
5. I think I did OK in my speech last night \_\_\_\_\_ I'd had almost no sleep for 24 hours.
6. Carol arrived at the meeting \_\_\_\_\_ I asked her not to be there.
7. The sky was grey and cloudy. \_\_\_\_\_, we went to the beach.
8. It looks like they're going to succeed \_\_\_\_\_ their present difficulties.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ there was no electricity, I was able to read because I had a candle.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ I heard the telephone ring, I didn't answer it.

**VII. Rewrite the sentences, using the words in the brackets. Change other words in the sentence if necessary.**

1. I couldn't sleep. I was tired. (in spite of)  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. They have little money. They are happy. (despite)  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. My foot was hurt. I managed to walk to the nearest village. (although)  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. We planned to visit Petronas in the afternoon. We could not afford the fee. (however)  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. I got very wet in the rain. I had an umbrella. (although)  
\_\_\_\_\_

**VIII. Rearrange the words in the correct order to describe the films.**

1. *Harry Potter and the Order of the Phoenix*  
a/ It's/ do/ boy/ about/ can/ magic/ who  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. *The Incredibles*  
are/ are/ who/ They/ all/ family/ superheroes/ a.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. *The Island of Dr Moreau*  
place/ to/ a/ wants/ go/ where/ It's/ no one.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. *Alien*  
a/ on/ about/ a/ lives/ monster/ spaceship/ It's/ which.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. *Atlantis: The Lost Empire*  
named Milo Thatch/ of Atlantis/ A team/ find/ a scientist/ of people/ the lost empire/ help.  
\_\_\_\_\_

## C. SPEAKING

### I. Match the answers to the questions below, and write your answers in the blanks.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1/ Who's your favourite actress?      a. The last book I read was *His Dark Materials* by Philip Pullman – it was absolutely brilliant.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2/ When did you last go to the concert?      b. I last went to a concert about three weeks ago – some friends were in a concert at my school.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3/ Did you enjoy the film?      c. I like different kinds of music but especially rock music – my favourite group are the *Red Hot Chili Peppers*.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4/ What kind of music do you like?      d. I really like Cameron Diaz – she's really pretty and really funny and I think she's a very good actress.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5/ Do you like ballet?      e. It was okay ... not fantastic.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6/ What was the last book you read?      f. Yes, actually. I love ballet, my favourite is *Swan Lake*.

### II. Use the questions to interview two students from another group. Make a note of their answers.

1. What kind of films do you like?
2. Who's your favourite actor/ actress?
3. When did you last go to the cinema?
4. What did you see?
5. Who was in it?
6. Did you enjoy it?
7. Who was it by?

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

## D. READING

### I. Read the conversation, and then answer the questions.

**Susan:** Sorry, guys, the Batman film's sold out. Which film will we see instead?

**Linda:** How about this? It's called *Girl of my Dreams*. It's about a young man who dreamt about a perfect girl. The next day he went to the bookshop where he met a girl called Nina.

**Nick:** That's a love story. No, thank you!

**Paul:** What about *Journey into Space*? It's about some spacemen who go to Mars.

**Linda:** Mm. It doesn't sound very exciting. Is there anything else on?

**Susan:** How about *The Pyramid*? It's a horror film about a monster in an Egyptian pyramid which comes alive.

**Paul:** OK, that's better. Shall I get the tickets?

**Susan:** Yes, but let's hurry. It's half past five. The next performance starts in five minutes.

1. Which film do they want to see at first?

2. Why can't they see it?

3. Which films do Linda, Paul, and Susan suggest that they see?

4. What types of film are they?

5. Which film do they agree to see?

**II. Read the passage, and then answer the questions.**

***Pirates of the Caribbean***

Captain Jack Sparrow is a pirate. He has a ship called the Black Pearl. One day, he goes to Jamaica, where he sees a beautiful woman, Elizabeth. Then Jack meets Will, who loves Elizabeth too. Jack, Will, and Elizabeth look for pirate treasure. The treasure is on the island Isla de Muerta. They must fight the pirate Captain Barbarossa, who has the treasure. Captain Jack wins and they all go back to Jamaica. There, Elizabeth tells Will that she loves him.

1. Is Captain Jack Sparrow a pirate? What is the name of his ship?

2. Who loves Elizabeth?

3. Who has the treasure?

4. Who wins the treasure?

5. Who does Elizabeth love?

**III. Read the film review, and then answer the questions.**

*A Kid in King Arthur's Court* is directed by Michael Gottlieb. The main character in the film is a teenager called Calvin Fuller. Calvin is played by Thomas Ian Nicholas. This film is a modern retelling of Mark Twain's classic book *Connecticut Yankee*.

Calvin lives in California, USA. He is a very shy boy and he is not very good at sports. At the beginning of the film, Calvin is playing baseball when there is a terrible earthquake. A hole opens in the ground and Calvin falls through it. He lands in the past, in the time of King Arthur.

Calvin meets King Arthur and Merlin, the wizard. King Arthur is played by Joss Ackland and Merlin is played by Ron Moody. They think that Calvin is amazing because he plays them modern music on his CD player and he shows them how to make rollerblades and a mountain bike. Calvin is trained to be a knight and he becomes more confident. Calvin helps King Arthur to beat his enemy, Lord Belasco, and then Merlin sends Calvin back to the future. Calvin finds himself back in the baseball game, but this time he wins the game.

The special effects in *A Kid in King Arthur's Court* are very good. Michael Gottlieb is a great director and the actors' performances are good. The film is funny and exciting. It's a comedy, a drama, and an action film all in one.

1. What type is the film “*A Kid in King Arthur’s Court*”?

2. Who is the main character? By whom is it played?

3. Who is the director of the film? Is he a good director?

4. What is Calvin doing when the earthquake happens?

5. How can he land in the time of King Arthur?

6. Why do King Arthur and Merlin think that Calvin is amazing?

7. Who is Calvin trained to become?

8. What does Calvin do to help King Arthur?

9. How can Calvin come back to the present time?

10. How are the special effects in the film?

11. How are the actors’ performances?

12. What does the writer think about the film?

## E. WRITING

I. Write the film review, using the following cues.

### A Film Review

- **What kind the film is:** a Disney cartoon film
- **What the title of the film is:** *Atlantis: The Lost Empire*
- **Who the film is directed by:** Gary Trousdale and Kirk Wise
- **Who the main character is:** a scientist named Milo Thatch
- **Who the characters are played by:** Milo’s voice is played by *Michael J. Fox*
- **A short description of the plot (the story):** A rich man gives Milo a submarine and a team of people to help him find the *Lost Empire of Atlantis*. After some exciting adventures, Milo and his team find Atlantis. But Atlantis is in trouble. Milo has to save it.
- **Details of special effects/ costumes/ music, etc.:** The music in this film is amazing.
- **What we think is good or bad about the film:** The film is sometimes scary, but it is very exciting.
- **A recommendation (advice about whether your classmates should watch this film and who will enjoy it):** If you like action films and cartoons, you will love *Atlantis: The Lost Empire*.

**Answer:**

II. Read the information in the table about two actors from the UK, then write a short paragraph for each of them.

Name	Emma Watson	Dev Patel
Date and place of birth	1990, Paris	1990, London
Title of film	Harry Potter films	Slumdog Millionaire
Year(s)	2001 – 2009	2009
Other actors	Daniel Radcliffe, Rupert Grint	Freida Pinto

Emma Watson was born \_\_\_\_\_

Dev Patel was \_\_\_\_\_

**TEST (UNIT 8)**

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

- 1. A. picked                      B. clicked                      C. promised                      D. delivered
- 2. A. wanted                      B. developed                      C. needed                      D. included
- 3. A. jumped                      B. loved                      C. washed                      D. liked
- 4. A. actor                      B. acting                      C. address                      D. action
- 5. A. long                      B. boring                      C. shocked                      D. comedy

II. Find which word does not belong to each group.

- 6. A. interesting                      B. exhausting                      C. tired                      D. exciting
- 7. A. actor                      B. comedy                      C. director                      D. editor
- 8. A. entertaining                      B. exciting                      C. shocking                      D. acting
- 9. A. despite                      B. in spite of                      C. because of                      D. although
- 10. A. plot                      B. documentary                      C. horror                      D. thriller

**III. Choose the correct answers.**

11. A \_\_\_\_\_ is a film that shows real life events or stories.  
A. action                      B. documentary              C. thriller                      D. comedy
12. I found the book so \_\_\_\_\_ that I couldn't put it down.  
A. gripping                      B. boring                      C. tiring                      D. shocking
13. A \_\_\_\_\_ is a film that tries to make audiences laugh.  
A. horror                      B. sci-fi                      C. comedy                      D. documentary
14. The end of the film was so \_\_\_\_\_ that many people cried.  
A. shocking                      B. moving                      C. exciting                      D. boring
15. Mr. Bean's Holiday is a \_\_\_\_\_ film – I was laughing from beginning to end.  
A. hilarious                      B. violent                      C. scary                      D. moving
16. \_\_\_\_\_ they spent a lot of money on the film, it wasn't a big success.  
A. However                      B. Nevertheless              C. When                      D. Although
17. Last night, I didn't go to bed early \_\_\_\_\_ being very tired.  
A. despite of                      B. in spite of                      C. although                      D. because of
18. Not many people went to see the film; \_\_\_\_\_, it received good reviews from critics.  
A. however                      B. despite                      C. but                      D. although
19. We found the plot of the film \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. bored                      B. boring                      C. interested                      D. acting
20. We were \_\_\_\_\_ with the latest film of that director.  
A. satisfy                      B. satisfying                      C. satisfactory                      D. satisfied

**IV. Complete the sentences, using *although*, *despite*, *in spite of*, *however*, or *nevertheless*. Sometimes, two answers are possible.**

21. \_\_\_\_\_ difficulties, the firemen managed to save many people who were caught in the fire.
22. \_\_\_\_\_ he got top marks at high school, he never went to university.
23. She failed the test \_\_\_\_\_ she studied hard.
24. Everyone thought she would accept the offer. \_\_\_\_\_, she turned it down.
25. We enjoyed our holiday \_\_\_\_\_ the rain.

**V. Rewrite the sentences, using the words in the brackets. Change other words in the sentence if necessary.**

26. The new restaurant looks good. It seems to have few customers. (however)  
\_\_\_\_\_
27. We had planned to walk right round the lake. The heavy rain made this impossible. (although)  
\_\_\_\_\_
28. I've been too busy to answer my email. I'll do it soon. (nevertheless)  
\_\_\_\_\_

29. Mary was sick. She didn't leave the meeting until it ended. (despite)

30. We live in the same street. We rarely see each other. (in spite of)

**VI. Complete the sentences with the words in the box.**

<i>action</i>	<i>animated</i>	<i>comedy</i>	<i>horror</i>	<i>western</i>
<i>musical</i>	<i>romance</i>	<i>film</i>	<i>science-fiction</i>	<i>drama</i>

31. We are going to the cinema to see a \_\_\_\_\_.
32. A \_\_\_\_\_ is a play in a theatre or on television or radio, or plays and acting generally.
33. There are always cowboys in a \_\_\_\_\_.
34. I love \_\_\_\_\_ films. They're very exciting.
35. Have you ever seen this \_\_\_\_\_? It's really funny.
36. *Dracula* is the best \_\_\_\_\_ film I've ever seen.
37. My favourite \_\_\_\_\_ films have beings from Mars.
38. I watched this \_\_\_\_\_ last week. The singing and dancing are great.
39. The *Lion King* is an excellent \_\_\_\_\_ film. I love cartoons.
40. He falls in love with a pretty girl. It's a beautiful \_\_\_\_\_.

**VII. Fill in each blank in the conversation with ONE suitable word.**

*Mai:* We're going to (41) \_\_\_\_\_ a movie this weekend. Will you (42) \_\_\_\_\_ with us?

*Hoa:* That's a good idea. Yes, I'd love (43) \_\_\_\_\_.

*Mai:* There's a good movie (44) \_\_\_\_\_ at the Thang Loi Cinema (45) \_\_\_\_\_ Saturday evening.

*Hoa:* Where would you like to meet?

*Mai:* Let's meet (46) \_\_\_\_\_ Lan's house, and we all go to the cinema together.

*Hoa:* Do you also (47) \_\_\_\_\_ Lan to go to the cinema?

*Mai:* Yes. Can we go to her house (48) \_\_\_\_\_ seven o'clock?

*Hoa:* OK. I'll (49) \_\_\_\_\_ you then. Bye.

*Mai:* OK. (50) \_\_\_\_\_.

**VIII. Number the lines of the conversation in the correct order from 51 to 60. The first (0) has been done for you as an example.**

- A/ Linda: Well, let's go to the cinema! What's on, do you know?
- B/ Tara: 7.30. Yeah, perfect. Well, why don't we have drink first, then go at 7.30?
- 0 C/ Linda: Tara, do you want to go out tomorrow night?
- D/ Tara: Yeah, great. I love Johnny Depp! What time is it on? Have you got a newspaper?

- E/ Linda:** Okay, that's a good idea. Where do you want to meet for a drink?
- F/ Linda:** Yeah, here. Erm, let's see. It's on at either 7.30 or 9.30. What do you think?
- G/ Linda:** OK, Tara. But I haven't got much money.
- H/ Linda:** Mmm, I don't really like that sort of thing. How about the new Johnny Depp film? My sister saw it last week and she thought it was really good.
- I/ Tara:** There's an old Star Wars film – why don't we go and see that?
- J/ Tara:** How about Macy's? It's near the cinema. Let's meet at about 7.00. Is that OK for you?
- K/ Tara:** Good idea! I feel bored, now. I'd like to do something different.

**IX. Read the film review, and decide whether the statements are true (T), or false (F), and tick the correct box.**

Have you ever read *Alice In Wonderland*, by Lewis Carol? I did and I really like it. It's an adventure story full of magic and danger. Yesterday I saw Tim Burton's version of the film at the cinema.

This story is about Alice, who is now a teenager. A man wants to marry her, but she runs away and falls down a rabbit hole. She travels to Wonderland, which she has visited before as a child, and meets a lot of amazing characters on her adventures.

There are a lot of good special effects in the film. The Red Queen, played by Helena Bonham Carter, is very scary, and Johnny Depp is brilliant as the Mad Hatter. He has acted in a lot of films before but this is my favourite one. Mia Wasilkowska is good as Alice; this is her first big film and I think she's going to become a big star!

Overall, I think this is a good film for teenagers, but it's a bit long. You should see it if you like fantasy and adventure, but don't go if you like romances: it's not a love story.

*Charlie, Manchester, UK*

- |   | <b>True</b>              | <b>False</b>             |
|---|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 61. <i>Alice In Wonderland</i> was directed by Lewis Carol.                     | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 62. The film is both an adventure story and a love story.                       | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 63. Alice is still in her childhood.  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 64. Alice has never been to Wonderland before.                                  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 65. She meets a lot of amazing people in Wonderland.                            | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 66. The special effects in the films are good.                                  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 67. The Red Queen is very friendly.   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 68. The Mad Hatter is played by Johnny Depp.                                    | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 69. Johnny Depp played his first role in this film.                             | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 70. The writer of the report thinks that the film is a good film for teenagers. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |



**X. Read the passage, and then answer the questions.**

***My favourite actors***

I like a lot of different actors, but my real favourites are Daniel Craig and Halle Berry.

Daniel Craig is British and he's a really talented actor. He's been in a lot of different kinds of films including action adventure, science fiction, and romantic drama, but he always gives an excellent performance. He was brilliant in *Tomb Raider* as *Alex West*, but my favourite film is *Casino Royale*. I think Daniel Craig is a fantastic James Bond.

Halle Berry is American. She was a model, but then decided to become an actress. I like her because she's beautiful. She's a good actress and I think she has a great sense of humour. I'm not keen on some of her films, such as *Catwoman*, but her other films are excellent. My favourite is *X-Men* which is a science fiction film. She plays the main character *Storm*, who has the ability to change the weather.

Daniel Craig and Halle Berry are both entertaining and talented actors. I love watching their films.

*Nick, London, UK*

71. What are Nick's favourite actors?

---

72. Where does Daniel Craig come from?

---

73. What kinds of films has he played?

---

74. What is his role in *Tomb Raider*?

---

75. What Daniel Craig's film does Nick like best? Why?

---

76. Where does Halle Berry come from?

---

77. What was her job before she became an actress?

---

78. Why does Nick like Halle Berry?

---

79. What Halle Berry's film does Nick like best?

---

80. What is her role in that film?

---

**A. PHONETICS**

**I. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.**

- |                |            |              |            |
|----------------|------------|--------------|------------|
| 1. A. manner   | B. tourist | C. machine   | D. action  |
| 2. A. reward   | B. country | C. samba     | D. music   |
| 3. A. costume  | B. canoe   | C. highlight | D. season  |
| 4. A. pavement | B. review  | C. concert   | D. samba   |
| 5. A. famous   | B. asleep  | C. pretty    | D. careful |

**II. Put the words in the table in the correct column according to their stress pattern.**

<i>listen</i>	<i>compete</i>	<i>prefer</i>	<i>cancel</i>	<i>perform</i>	<i>happy</i>
<i>afraid</i>	<i>rainy</i>	<i>handsome</i>	<i>dislike</i>	<i>reply</i>	<i>review</i>
<i>parade</i>	<i>album</i>	<i>remote</i>	<i>culture</i>	<i>harvest</i>	<i>annual</i>

Stress on 1 <sup>st</sup> syllable	Stress on 2 <sup>nd</sup> syllable
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

**B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR**

**I. Fill each blank in the following sentences with a word from the box.**

<i>attractions</i>	<i>colorful</i>	<i>decorating</i>	<i>society</i>	<i>lantern</i>
<i>considered</i>	<i>superstition</i>	<i>canals</i>	<i>holiday</i>	<i>traditionally</i>

- Diwali is India's biggest and most important \_\_\_\_\_ of the year.
- Halloween has always been a holiday filled with mystery, magic and \_\_\_\_\_.
- Chinese New Year ends with a \_\_\_\_\_ festival.
- The number of \_\_\_\_\_ in Da Lat is increasing.
- India was an agricultural \_\_\_\_\_ where people would seek the divine blessing of Lakshmi, the Goddess of Wealth.
- The Carnival in Rio de Janeiro is a world famous festival and \_\_\_\_\_ the biggest carnival in the world with 2 million people per day on the streets.
- \_\_\_\_\_, the festival also marked the end of harvest, and parents who had been hard at work in the fields enjoyed spending extra time with their children.
- The children wear \_\_\_\_\_ masks and dance in the streets with star lanterns that are illuminated by candles.
- During the Carnival of Venice, the \_\_\_\_\_ are full of colorful boats.
- Every year, in Harbin Ice and Snow Festival people build incredible things out of ice and snow, \_\_\_\_\_ them with lights and lasers.

**II. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.**

Two of the most important holidays in the United States are Independence Day and Thanksgiving Day. The fourth of July marks the American declaration of independence from Britain. Most towns, big or small, celebrate the fourth of July with parades and fireworks. Families (1)\_\_\_\_\_ with barbecues or picnics. Thanksgiving Day is celebrated in fall, on the fourth Thursday in November. It is a day (2)\_\_\_\_\_ people give thanks to the harvest. Most families (3)\_\_\_\_\_ a large dinner with roast turkey. (4)\_\_\_\_\_ Independence Day and Thanksgiving Day are national (5)\_\_\_\_\_.

1.   A. celebrating    B. celebration    C. celebrate      D. celebrated
2.   A. where            B. when            C. which          D. in which
3.   A. have             B. buy             C. help            D. take
4.   A. Besides         B. Both            C. Either          D. Nor
5.   A. chances          B. months         C. holidays        D. times

**III. Make questions for the underlined parts in the following sentences, using the question words in brackets.**

**A. Diwali (Festival of Lights)**

1. Diwali is celebrated in October or November each year. (When)  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. It marked the last harvest of the year before winter. (What)  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Indians celebrate Diwali with family gatherings, glittering clay lamps, festive fireworks, strings of electric lights, bonfires, flowers, sharing of sweets, and worship to Lakshmi. (How)  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Some people believe that Lakshmi wanders the Earth looking for homes where she will be welcomed. (What)  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. People open their doors and windows and light lamps to invite Lakshmi in. (What)  
\_\_\_\_\_

**B. Elephant Race Festival, Don Village**

6. Elephant Race Festival takes place in the village of Don or in the forests near the Sevepoi River (Dac Lak) every spring (during the third lunar month). (When and where)  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. The M'ngong ethnic group are known for their bravery and skill in wild elephant hunting. (What)  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. The racetrack is 1-2km long, set on even ground where there are only a few big trees, wide enough to accommodate ten running elephants. (How long; Where; How wide)  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

## C. SPEAKING

I. Match the festival with their activities. Following the example to practise the exchange about the festivals.

	FESTIVALS	ACTIVITIES
<i>f</i>	1. Tet holiday – the 1 <sup>st</sup> of the first Lunar month	a. sending loving gifts such as flowers, chocolate...
_____	2. Christmas Day – December 25 <sup>th</sup>	b. eating turkey
_____	3. Teacher's Day – November 20 <sup>th</sup>	c. making moon cakes and watching dragon dance
_____	4. Valentine Day – February 14 <sup>th</sup>	d. getting toys from Santa Claus
_____	5. April Fool's Day – April 1 <sup>st</sup>	e. showing gratitude to teachers
_____	6. Mid-Autumn festival – the 15 <sup>th</sup> of the 8 <sup>th</sup> Lunar month	f. making Banh Chung and special food, people decorate their houses
_____	7. Thanksgiving Day – the 4 <sup>th</sup> Thursday of November in the USA	g. making jack-o-lanterns from pumpkin
_____	8. Easter Sunday – between April 4 <sup>th</sup> and May 8 <sup>th</sup>	h. wearing ugly masks
_____	9. Halloween – October 31 <sup>st</sup>	i. going to church, eating egg candies and egg chocolates
_____	10. Saint Patrick's Day – March 17 <sup>th</sup>	j. playing small tricks

*Example: 1 – f*

**A:** When is the Tet holiday held?

**B:** (It is held) on the 1<sup>st</sup> of the first Lunar month.

**A:** How do people celebrate it?

**B:** Well, they often make Banh Chung and special food. They also decorate their houses.

II. Below are some famous festivals in Viet Nam and around the world. Work in pair to ask and answer about these festivals. You can search more information on the Internet and use it in your answers.

Festival	Its main purpose	Its activities
1. <b>Carnival of Venice</b> – the day before Ash Wednesday	Everybody was free to do things desired all year without any guilt thanks to the masks.	Bands, jugglers and entertainers are everywhere and the canals are full of colorful boats. The nights are also full of parties and masked dances.
2. <b>Perfume Pagoda festival</b> – begins in the middle of the 1 <sup>st</sup> lunar month and lasts	People pray for happiness and prosperity in the coming year.	Huge numbers of pilgrims flock to the site. A wide range of traditional cultural activities is incorporated. Perfume Pagoda is not only a

until the middle of the 3rd one (or from February till March)		religious site, but a great sight-seeing spot in Vietnam as well.
3. <b>Rio de Janeiro Carnival</b> – on the Saturday before Ash Wednesday	Festival marks a farewell to bad things and prepares for Christ's death and resurrection.	Everybody enjoys parties. There are lots of street parades and people dressed in colourful costumes. There are samba bands playing and people dancing.
4. <b>Da Nang Fireworks Festival</b> – at the end of April	It is held to celebrate the occasion of Vietnam National Reunion Day (30 April) and Labor Day (1 May).	Participants are pyrotechnic teams from all over the world competing against each other. Location of the firing is at Han River port. Watching stands are on the other side of the river bank. However, the fireworks performance can be viewed at many points around the city, on the bridges or on boats.

### Useful questions

- When is the festival held?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- What do people celebrate the festival for?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- How do people celebrate it?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Could you tell us more about the festival?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Which festival do you like best? Give the reasons.  
\_\_\_\_\_

### D. READING

I. Fill in each blank in the following passage with ONE suitable word from the box.

<i>ones</i>	<i>enjoy</i>	<i>rises</i>	<i>by</i>
<i>are</i>	<i>as</i>	<i>according</i>	<i>numbers</i>

Among the festivals celebrated (1) \_\_\_\_\_ some of Asian people is the Moon Cake Festival, also known (2) \_\_\_\_\_ the Mid-August Festival. Large (3) \_\_\_\_\_ of small round moon cakes (4) \_\_\_\_\_ eaten on this day, and children (5) \_\_\_\_\_ carrying colourful paper lanterns come in all shapes; the more popular (6) \_\_\_\_\_ are shaped like fish, rabbits, and butterflies. (7) \_\_\_\_\_ to them the moon shines brightest on the night of the Moon Cake Festival. As the moon (8) \_\_\_\_\_, tables are placed outside the house and women make offerings of fruit and moon cakes to the Moon Goddess.

**II. Read the conversations about some festivals around the world, and then answer the questions.**

**Jack:** Hello there, everyone. It's festival time here in the UK and today we're bringing you some pictures and information about late summer festivals around the world. Let's start in the USA. Our reporter Anna Lindstrom is at the Boston Carnival right now. How's it going, Anna?

**Anna:** Hi, Jack. It's great. It's really hot, late August day. I'm having a good time..., everyone is having a good time.

**Jack:** What's happening right now?

**Anna:** Well, I'm standing in the street and I'm watching some fantastic dancers. They've moving slowly towards me. They're wearing really colourful costumes and they're dancing very well.

**Jack:** Sounds good.

**Anna:** Yes, and I'm with Whitney, who makes food for all the partygoers here. Whitney, what are you doing?

**Whitney:** Well, I'm cooking some lovely Caribbean chicken curry.

**Anna:** Mmm, it smells wonderful.

**Jack:** Thank you, Anna. Now, Boston isn't the only place having a party at this time of the year. Our reporter Justin Leonard is at the Mariachi festival in Guadalajara, Mexico. Justin, how's it going over there?

**Justin:** Hi, Jack. It's great here. I'm sitting in the town square and I'm listening to some fantastic mariachi music. In this band, the guitarists are all playing together; it's lovely.

**Jack:** It sounds noisy there.

**Justin:** It is! The spectators aren't just listening, they're clapping and shouting and singing with the music.

**Jack:** Thank you, Justin. And in Helsinki, Finland, Pam Sykes is reporting on the Helsinki Festival.

**Pam:** Hello, Jack. Well, it's quiet here – it's not like Mexico. This is an arts festival, so it's all in cinemas, theaters and concert halls. Some people are queuing behind me to go into a theater. I have Mika here with me. Mika, what are you queuing for today?

**Mika:** I'm not queuing for the theater – I'm with my children – they're over there; they're waiting to see some funny films, some old films with Charlie Chaplin.

**Pam:** That sounds like fun! Thank you, Mika. Back to you, Jack.

**Jack:** Thanks, Pam. Now, in the studio this afternoon....

1. Which festival is happening in the USA?

---

2. How is the weather in Boston?

---

3. What can Anna see in the streets?

---

4. What are the dancers wearing?

---

5. Which food does Whitney serve the festival?

---

6. Where does the Mariachi festival take place?

---

7. What can we hear or see at the Mariachi festival?

---

8. What are the spectators at the Mariachi festival doing?

---

9. What kind of festival is the Helsinki Festival?

---

10. What do people often do at the Helsinki Festival?

---

**III. Read the following passage, and then tick the correct answers: true (T), false (F), or not mentioned (NM).**

*Las Fallas Festival* in Valencia, Spain is a week-long festival with music, and a lot of fireworks. *Fallas* are big sculptures made of wood and paper. People burn them at the end of the festival. The festival takes place on 15-19 March every year.

David and Marta, two teenagers from Valencia, are talking about the preparations for the festival of *Las Fallas*.

**David:** The tradition of *Las Fallas* started when carpenters burned their old wood at the end of winter to celebrate spring. Now, big groups of neighbours usually make a *falla* together. They can take about a year to make! My brother is an artist and he designed our *falla*. He's worried because he hasn't finished and it has to be ready next week!

**Marta:** I live in a village near Valencia but I come and stay with my grandmother for *Las Fallas*. There's music, dancing and lines of people walking in the streets. It's a very noisy festival and it goes on all day and all night for a week. A lot of people wear beautiful, traditional costumes and they make foods in the streets. It's always great fun. This year is going to be the best. I'm really excited!

- |  | T                        | F                        | NM                       |
|--|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. The <i>Las Fallas</i> festival is at the beginning of March.            | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2. It takes place in Valencia, Spain.                                      | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3. People make the <i>fallas</i> with their friends.                       | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4. People make the <i>falla</i> in one week.                               | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5. The festival takes place outside in the street.                         | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 6. People spend a lot of money on fireworks, <i>fallas</i> , and costumes. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 7. One problem with the festival is the noise from the fireworks.          | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 8. The festival often brings a lot of fun.                                 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 9. A lot of tourists go to the festival.                                   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 10. People burn <i>fallas</i> at the end of the festival.                  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

**IV. Read the text carefully, and then answer the questions.**

***Day of the Dead – Mexico***

Day of the Dead is celebrated on November 1 in Mexico, Ecuador, Guatemala and other parts of Central and South America. Families gather to pray to the souls of dead relatives, asking them to return for just one night. People decorate altars in their homes and graveyards with food, candles, candy skulls and marigolds to welcome the souls back to Earth. Skeletons are displayed throughout cities, and people dressed as skeletons parade through the streets. *Pan de los muertos* (bread of the dead) is baked in the shape of skulls and crossbones, and a toy is hidden inside each loaf. The person who bites into the toy is said to have good luck. Day of the Dead is a time to celebrate and remember the lives of dead family members.

1. Where and when is the Day of the Dead celebrated?

\_\_\_\_\_

2. What do families gather to pray for?

\_\_\_\_\_

3. What do people do to welcome the souls back to Earth?

\_\_\_\_\_

4. What is the custom with *Pan de los muertos* (bread of the dead)?

\_\_\_\_\_

5. What is the purpose of the Day of the Dead?

\_\_\_\_\_

**V. Read the passage, and then answer the questions.**

***A Hindu festival: Diwali***

The festival of Diwali is one of the most important religious festivals in India. It lasts for five days around the end of October. It is the festival of Lakshmi, the Goddess who, in the Hindu religion, brings peace and prosperity.

Preparations for the festival begin several weeks before the festival. People clean and decorate their homes, prepare special food and buy new clothes and jewelry to welcome the Goddess in their homes. All over India, people light up their homes with oil lamps and colourful lights.

The celebrations take place on the darkest night of the lunar month, Amavasya. In the evening, fireworks fill the sky to make Diwali a true 'Festival of Light'.

1. In which country is Diwali celebrated?

\_\_\_\_\_

2. How long is the festival of Diwali?

\_\_\_\_\_

3. Which Goddess is it the festival of?

\_\_\_\_\_

4. What do people do to prepare for the festival?

\_\_\_\_\_

5. Why is Diwali called 'Festival of Light'?

\_\_\_\_\_



## E. WRITING

Write a paragraph about Da Lat Flower Festival, using the cues given below.

1. **Name of festival:** Da Lat Flower Festival.
2. **What is the festival?** The programs of Flower festival are a variety of content for every festival period. These will make interests to tourists and participants as well.
3. **How often is it held?** Da Lat Flower Festival has been organized every two years since 2005.
4. **Where is it held?** The Flower Garden of Da Lat
5. **Why is it held?** The local government has recently taken more measures to increase cultural activities in the tourism industry.
6. **What is the content of the festival?** The shows have the participation of thousands of professional and un-professional artists. Besides the opening and closing ceremonies, the festival has also some other programs such as flower exhibition fair, flower car march, trade fair, contest of Da Lat farmers.

*Answer:*

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

## TEST (UNIT 9)

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

- |                            |                    |                     |                      |
|----------------------------|--------------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| 1. A. <u>f</u> estival     | B. <u>e</u> nd     | C. <u>e</u> lephant | D. <u>p</u> erform   |
| 2. A. <u>c</u> elebrate    | B. <u>c</u> andle  | C. <u>c</u> ake     | D. <u>r</u> acing    |
| 3. A. <u>p</u> refer       | B. <u>d</u> esert  | C. <u>h</u> eld     | D. <u>c</u> elebrate |
| 4. A. <u>T</u> hanksgiving | B. <u>t</u> hey    | C. <u>t</u> han     | D. <u>t</u> hose     |
| 5. A. <u>a</u> pricot      | B. <u>l</u> antern | C. <u>g</u> ather   | D. <u>c</u> ranberry |

II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

- |                |            |            |             |
|----------------|------------|------------|-------------|
| 6. A. diverse  | B. serious | C. special | D. local    |
| 7. A. open     | B. affect  | C. direct  | D. renew    |
| 8. A. attend   | B. happen  | C. succeed | D. replace  |
| 9. A. order    | B. receive | C. perform | D. rehearse |
| 10. A. combine | B. invite  | C. circle  | D. discuss  |

**III. Find which word or phrases does not belong to each group.**

11. A. festival                      B. celebration                      C. tradition                      D. dishes  
12. A. Halloween                      B. costumes                      C. pumpkin                      D. turkey  
13. A. tomatoes                      B. flowers                      C. ham                      D. Spain  
14. A. feast                      B. Rice God                      C. harvest                      D. dancing  
15. A. desert                      B. elephant                      C. camp                      D. party

**IV. Choose the correct answers.**

16. People of \_\_\_\_\_ minorities in Phu Yen celebrate Hoi Mua Festival every March.  
A. native                      B. local                      C. ethnic                      D. village
17. The \_\_\_\_\_ atmosphere is felt around all the villages.  
A. festive                      B. festival                      C. air                      D. tradition
18. A lot of cultural and \_\_\_\_\_ activities are held as part of the Flower Festival in Da Lat. (art)  
A. arts                      B. artist                      C. artistic                      D. art
19. Diwali, the Hindu Festival of Light, is the \_\_\_\_\_ holiday of the year in India.  
A. more important                      B. most important  
C. importance                      D. most importance
20. The Academy Awards, commonly \_\_\_\_\_ as The Oscars, are the most famous film awards in the world.  
A. know                      B. knew                      C. known                      D. be known
21. It is \_\_\_\_\_ to see elephants racing in the Elephant Race Festival in Dak Lak.  
A. amaze                      B. amazing                      C. amazed                      D. amazement
22. La Tomatina is a \_\_\_\_\_ festival to celebrate the tomato harvest.  
A. season                      B. seasonal                      C. year                      D. annually
23. People put pumpkin \_\_\_\_\_ outside the homes during Halloween.  
A. lanterns                      B. lights                      C. neon signs                      D. bulbs
24. Everybody has gone to the \_\_\_\_\_ festival.  
A. music                      B. musical                      C. musicians                      D. musician
25. The \_\_\_\_\_ of the Rio Carnival is the Samba Parade.  
A. importance                      B. highlight                      C. best                      D. performance
26. The Elephant Race Festival in Dak Lak is a race between elephants that are ridden by their \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. own                      B. owning                      C. owner                      D. owners
27. The Samba Parade in Rio Carnival has thousands of samba \_\_\_\_\_ from various samba schools.  
A. perform                      B. performance                      C. performer                      D. performers
28. People in Cannes take the Cannes Film Festival \_\_\_\_\_ a very serious way.  
A. in                      B. at                      C. on                      D. with
29. The biggest prize of the Cannes Film Festival is the Palme d'Or, which is given \_\_\_\_\_ the best film.  
A. of                      B. to                      C. with                      D. for

30. The festival \_\_\_\_\_ every year at the end of August.  
 A. takes                      B. takes place                      C. occur                      D. held
31. La Tomatina \_\_\_\_\_ on the last Wednesday of August every year.  
 A. hold                      B. held                      C. is held                      D. be held
32. Villagers voluntarily contribute money and other things to \_\_\_\_\_ the festival.  
 A. open                      B. celebrate                      C. remember                      D. set
33. A lot of dancers go to Rio de Janeiro to \_\_\_\_\_ the Rio Carnival.  
 A. play                      B. take                      C. attend                      D. follow
34. In La Tomatina, people get to throw tomatoes at \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. themselves                      B. once                      C. together                      D. each other
35. Which do you think are \_\_\_\_\_ festivals?  
 A. season                      B. harvester                      C. artistic                      D. music

**V. Complete the following sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.**

36. There were lively New Year \_\_\_\_\_ all over the town. (celebrate)
37. The hall looked very \_\_\_\_\_ with its Christmas tree. (festival)
38. There are many \_\_\_\_\_ differences between the two communities. (culture)
39. She gave a wonderful \_\_\_\_\_ as the Iron Lady – the former British Prime Minister Margaret Thatcher. (perform)
40. When we heard she'd got the job, we all went off for a \_\_\_\_\_ drink. (celebrate)
41. What forms of \_\_\_\_\_ do you participate in during the festival? (entertain)
42. The Chinese New Year marks the \_\_\_\_\_ of spring and the start of the Lunar New Year. (begin)
43. Her eyes were wide with \_\_\_\_\_ when she heard the news. (excite)
44. Street are decorated with \_\_\_\_\_ lights and red banners. (colour)
45. It is \_\_\_\_\_ in America to eat turkey on Thanksgiving Day. (tradition)

**VI. Make questions for the underlined parts, using the question words in brackets.**

46. La Tomatina in Buñol near Valencia happens every year (How often)  
 \_\_\_\_\_
47. La Tomatina takes place on the last Wednesday in August. (When)  
 \_\_\_\_\_
48. The highlight of the festival is the tomato fight. (What)  
 \_\_\_\_\_
49. La Tomatina dates back to 1945 when an annual parade of enormous figures with big heads was passing through the streets of Bunyol. (When)  
 \_\_\_\_\_
50. Some youngsters accidentally knocked over one of the giants. (What)  
 \_\_\_\_\_

51. Burning Man lasts one week. (How long)

52. The festival began in San Francisco's Baker Beach in 1986. (When; Where)

53. The event begins on the last Monday in August, and ends on the first Monday in September. (When)

54. It takes its name from the ritual burning of a large wooden model of a hated person. (What)

55. In 2010, 51,515 people attended Burning Man. (How many)

**VII. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.**

***The Rio de Janeiro Carnival - Rio de Janeiro, Brazil***

Brazil's most popular and festive holiday is Carnival. In fact, many people (56) \_\_\_\_\_ Carnival one of the world's biggest celebrations. Each spring, on the Saturday before Ash Wednesday, the streets of Brazil's largest city, Rio de Janeiro, come alive (57) \_\_\_\_\_ wild parties, festivals and glamorous dances.

The Samba School Parade is the highlight of the (58) \_\_\_\_\_ event. About 3,000 performers, in colourful costumes embellished with feathers, beads and thousands of sequins, dance down the parade route into the Sambadrome – a dance stadium (59) \_\_\_\_\_ built for the event. Judges award a (60) \_\_\_\_\_ to the most spectacular group of dancers.

- |     |              |              |               |             |
|-----|--------------|--------------|---------------|-------------|
| 56. | A. consider  | B. regard    | C. believe    | D. hope     |
| 57. | A. of        | B. in        | C. with       | D. at       |
| 58. | A. four days | B. four-days | C. fourth day | D. four-day |
| 59. | A. build     | B. built     | C. to build   | D. building |
| 60. | A. prize     | B. price     | C. respect    | D. result   |

**VIII. Read the following passage, and then tick the correct answers: true (T), or false (F).**

Songkran is Thailand's most famous festival. An important event on the Buddhist calendar, this water festival marks the beginning of the traditional Thai New Year. Water is an important element of Songkran, especially in more recent times when the throwing of water has become a huge part of the annual celebrations. If you're visiting Thailand during this period, don't be surprised if you get splashed. Crowds of people roam around throwing buckets of water, using water pistols and just generally soaking anyone in the vicinity. Appreciation of family is another important aspect of the festival, with many Thai people making their way to their hometowns to spend time with older relatives. Buddhists also visit temples throughout Songkran where water is poured on Buddha images and on the hands of Buddhist monks as a mark of respect.

Without a doubt, Songkran is a hugely important festival to the Thai people but it's also very popular with visitors and many tourists specifically arrange their holidays around this unique event. Anyone and everyone can and will get involved in the celebrations. If you're out and about during Songkran, you're almost guaranteed to end up soaked but you'll have lots of fun in the process!

	<b>True</b>	<b>False</b>
61. Songkran is considered the festival of the traditional Thai New Year.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
62. Water has been used during the festival recently but not in the past.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
63. People have many ways to make each other wet with water.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
64. Songkran is also an occasion for people to go back to the hometown to spend time with their relatives.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
65. It is certainly not a religious festival.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
66. Everyone visits temples to pour water on Buddha images to show their respect.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
67. The Thai do not let foreigners participate in the festival.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
68. Songkran is actually a very important festival in Thailand.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
69. Nearly everyone gets wet after taking part in the festival.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
70. The festival only has the religious meaning but it is not enjoyable.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

**IX. Read the text carefully, and then answer the questions.**

***Holi – India***

Holi is a spring festival also known as the festival of colors. It is an ancient Hindu religious festival which starts with a Holika bonfire on the night before Holi where people gather, sing and dance. The next morning is free for all carnival of colors, where everyone plays, chases and colors each other with dry powder and colored water, with some carrying water guns and colored water-filled balloons for their water fight. Children and youth spray coloured powder solutions at each other, laugh and celebrate, while elders tend to smear dry coloured powder on each other's face. Visitors to homes are first teased with colours, then served with Holi delicacies, desserts and drinks. After playing with colours, and cleaning up, people bathe, put on clean clothes, visit friends and family.

- 71. What is the festival Holi in India?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 72. What does Holi start with?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 73. What do people often do on the second day?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 74. What are some activities during the festival?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 75. What do people do after playing with colour?  
\_\_\_\_\_

**X. Read the text carefully, and then answer the questions.**

The tradition of dressing in costume for Halloween has both European and Celtic roots. Hundreds of years ago, winter was an uncertain and frightening time. Food supplies often ran low and, for the many people afraid of the dark, the short days of winter were full of constant worry. On Halloween, when it was believed that ghosts came back to the earthly world, people thought that they would encounter ghosts if they left their homes. To avoid being recognized by these ghosts, people would wear masks when they left their homes after dark so that the ghosts would mistake them for fellow spirits. On Halloween, to keep ghosts away from their houses, people would place bowls of food outside their homes to appease the ghosts and prevent them from attempting to enter.

76. What is the origin of the tradition of dressing in costume for Halloween?

---

77. What happened in winter hundreds of years ago?

---

78. What would people encounter if they left their homes on Halloween in the past?

---

79. What would people do to avoid being recognized by the ghosts?

---

80. And what would people do to keep ghosts away from their houses?

---

## TEST YOURSELF 3

**I. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.**

- |               |            |              |            |
|---------------|------------|--------------|------------|
| 1. A. beauty  | B. career  | C. fireworks | D. harvest |
| 2. A. award   | B. drama   | C. actor     | D. hero    |
| 3. A. appear  | B. prepare | C. allow     | D. happen  |
| 4. A. police  | B. story   | C. cowboy    | D. western |
| 5. A. relaxed | B. boring  | C. moving    | D. awful   |

**II. Choose the correct answers.**

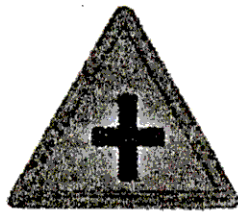
6. All critics said that film was really \_\_\_\_\_; nevertheless, I was so \_\_\_\_\_ that I saw it from beginning to end.  
A. interesting – boring                      B. boring – interesting  
C. interested – bored                        D. boring – interested
7. \_\_\_\_\_ having a happy ending, the film starts with a terrible accident.  
A. Despite                      B. Although                      C. However                      D. Nevertheless
8. In spite of the silly \_\_\_\_\_, many people enjoyed that comedy.  
A. actor                      B. scene                      C. character                      D. plot
9. Although the acting is wonderful, the ending is very \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. exciting                      B. fantastic                      C. interesting                      D. boring
10. They spent a huge amount of money on the film; \_\_\_\_\_, it was not a big success.  
A. although                      B. however                      C. but                      D. because

11. \_\_\_\_\_ Johnny Depp is a famous actor, he has failed in his recent films.  
 A. Although      B. Despite      C. However      D. Because
12. Who is going to \_\_\_\_\_ the Oscar for Best Actor this year?  
 A. get      B. take      C. win      D. pass
13. The film Titanic was the most successful – it \_\_\_\_\_ \$1,750 million and \_\_\_\_\_ eleven Oscars.  
 A. did – got      B. made – won      C. won – made      D. got – did
14. Charlie Chaplin was the most famous \_\_\_\_\_ of the silent films.  
 A. star      B. acting      C. plot      D. scene
15. Cameron Diaz and Julia Roberts are the best-paid actresses – both \_\_\_\_\_ \$20 million for their last films.  
 A. took      B. did      C. paid      D. earned

III. Look at the road signs. Write the correct answer in the blank for each description of the road sign.



16



17



18



19



20



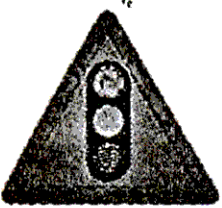
21



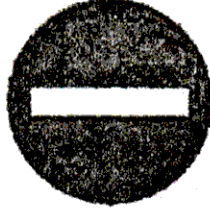
22



23



24



25

16. \_\_\_\_\_ A. No turning left  
 17. \_\_\_\_\_ B. Privileged intersection  
 18. \_\_\_\_\_ C. No turning right  
 19. \_\_\_\_\_ D. Only for pedestrians.  
 20. \_\_\_\_\_ E. Traffic-light intersection

21. \_\_\_\_\_ F. Go around the circle  
 22. \_\_\_\_\_ G. A two-way road  
 23. \_\_\_\_\_ H. One-way street  
 24. \_\_\_\_\_ I. Road work ahead  
 25. \_\_\_\_\_ J. An intersection

**IV. Put the words or phrases in the correct order to make a conversation.**

**Susan:** on Saturday/ you/ go to/ want to/ the cinema/ Do/?

(26) \_\_\_\_\_

**Nick:** a good idea/ That's!/ on/ What's/?

(27) \_\_\_\_\_

**Susan:** Bollywood/ new/ There's/ a/ musical.

(28) \_\_\_\_\_

**Nick:** that sort of thing/ I/ like/ really/ don't.

(29) \_\_\_\_\_

**Susan:** OK./ cinema/ eight/ meet/ the/ Let's/ outside/ at.

(30) \_\_\_\_\_

**V. Complete the sentences with the correct words from the box.**

<i>violent</i>	<i>musical</i>	<i>enjoyable</i>	<i>imagined</i>	<i>interesting</i>
<i>exciting</i>	<i>romantic</i>	<i>boring</i>	<i>frightening</i>	<i>funny</i>

31. A cartoon is usually \_\_\_\_\_.  
 32. A horror film is always \_\_\_\_\_.  
 33. A comedy is often \_\_\_\_\_.  
 34. A love story is always \_\_\_\_\_.  
 35. A \_\_\_\_\_ is a play or film in which part of the story is sung to music.  
 36. An action film can be very \_\_\_\_\_.  
 37. A science fiction film is often about a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ future.  
 38. A historical film can be \_\_\_\_\_ because of bad acting.  
 39. A thriller is a film which has a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ story, often about solving a crime.  
 40. It is very \_\_\_\_\_ to know the origin of the plot and stories around it.

**VI. Read the sentences about the famous films, and fill in each blank with the correct word.**

<i>frightened</i>	<i>hated</i>	<i>pleased</i>	<i>rich</i>	<i>blood</i>
<i>money</i>	<i>happily</i>	<i>night</i>	<i>married</i>	<i>monster</i>

Dracula lived in Transylvania, and at (41) \_\_\_\_\_ he became a vampire. He drank (42) \_\_\_\_\_ as everyone knows.

Robin Hood lived in England. It's true that he took (43) \_\_\_\_\_ from the (44) \_\_\_\_\_, and he gave it to poor people.



It's true that Dr Frankenstein created a (45) \_\_\_\_\_, which was very ugly, and people were very (46) \_\_\_\_\_ of it; they hated it.

Romeo and Juliet were very young – fourteen years old. It's true that their families (47) \_\_\_\_\_ each other, and that the two young people fell in love and got (48) \_\_\_\_\_. But, of course, their families weren't (49) \_\_\_\_\_. They were angry, and Romeo and Juliet didn't live (50) \_\_\_\_\_ forever. They killed themselves.

**VII. Complete the sentences with the types of films from the table.**

<i>drama</i>	<i>documentary</i>	<i>sci-fi film</i>	<i>thriller</i>	<i>comedy</i>
<i>musical</i>	<i>animated film</i>	<i>action film</i>	<i>romantic film</i>	<i>horror film</i>

51. People fall in love in a \_\_\_\_\_.
52. There is a lot of singing and dancing in a \_\_\_\_\_.
53. I laugh a lot when I see a \_\_\_\_\_.
54. There are often UFOs and aliens from space in a \_\_\_\_\_.
55. A \_\_\_\_\_ can be too scary to me.
56. There are usually a lot of guns and car chases in a(n) \_\_\_\_\_.
57. I sometimes cry when I watch a \_\_\_\_\_.
58. Drawings seem to move and talk in a(n) \_\_\_\_\_.
59. A \_\_\_\_\_ is a film that gives facts about a topic.
60. A \_\_\_\_\_ is a film with an exciting story, especially one about crimes.

**VIII. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.**

***Running of The Bulls - Pamplona, Spain***

The Running of the Bulls is a (61) \_\_\_\_\_ of the famous San Fermin festival – a practice that involves running in front of a small group of bulls (typically a dozen) that have been let loose on a course of a town's streets. A first firework is set off at 8 a.m. to alert the runners that the corral gate is (62) \_\_\_\_\_. A second firework signals that all six bulls have (63) \_\_\_\_\_ released. The third and fourth fireworks are signals that all of the herd has entered the bullring, marking the end of the event. Every year between 200 and 300 people (64) \_\_\_\_\_ injured during the run (65) \_\_\_\_\_ most injuries are due to falls and are not serious. So you think you support it?

61. A. part                      B. whole                      C. section                      D. piece
62. A. to close                      B. closed                      C. open                      D. opening
63. A. be                      B. been                      C. being                      D. to be
64. A. are                      B. were                      C. have been                      D. had been
65. A. because                      B. so                      C. although                      D. but

**IX. Read the following passage, and then tick the correct answers: true (T), or false (F).**

***Hung King Anniversary***

The Hung King Temple Festival is annually held from 8<sup>th</sup> to the 11<sup>th</sup> days of the third lunar month. The main festival day is on the 10<sup>th</sup> day of the third lunar March, on which the National Assembly has approved Vietnamese working people to annually have one more national holiday to mark the anniversary of the Hung King's death. Every year, on this traditional occasion, Vietnamese people worldwide join their brothers and sisters in spirit to

observe Vietnam National Day in commemoration of their ancestors. The main ceremony takes place at the Hung Temple on Nghia Linh Mountain in Phong Chau District, Phu Tho Province, about 85km northwest of Hanoi. The Hung King Temple Festival is one of the most important and sacred festivals of the Vietnamese people, deeply imbedded in the minds of every Vietnamese citizen, regardless of where they originated from.

- |  | True                     | False                    |
|--|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 66. The King Hung Anniversary is yearly held at the first half of the third lunar month. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 67. It has become one of the national holidays recently.                                 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 68. The Vietnamese show their respect to the ancestors on this occasion.                 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 69. The ceremony only takes place at the Hung Temple in Phu Tho Province                 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 70. The Hung King Temple Festival is mostly for entertainment.                           | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

**X. Read the text carefully, and then answer the questions.**

### ***The Lord of the Rings***

The three *Lord of the Rings* films appeared in 2001, 2002, and 2003. They are based on the novels of the British writer J.R.R. Tolkien. Director Peter Jackson filmed them in New Zealand. They cost more than \$300 million to make, and, in all, more than 20,000 actors appeared in the three films! After *Titanic*, they are the three most successful ever, taking over \$3 billion in total! The final film *The Return of the King* won 11 Oscars. In some countries, fans queued for three weeks to buy tickets.

71. When did the three *Lord of the Rings* films appear?  
\_\_\_\_\_
72. Whose novels are the films based on?  
\_\_\_\_\_
73. Who is the director?  
\_\_\_\_\_
74. Where were the three *Lord of the Rings* films filmed?  
\_\_\_\_\_
75. How much did the films cost to make?  
\_\_\_\_\_
76. How many actors appeared in the three films?  
\_\_\_\_\_
77. How much money could be got from the three films?  
\_\_\_\_\_
78. What was the final film of *The Lord of the Rings* films?  
\_\_\_\_\_
79. How many Oscars did the film *The Return of the King* get?  
\_\_\_\_\_
80. Did it take a long time for fans to get tickets for the film *The Return of the King* in some countries?  
\_\_\_\_\_

**A. PHONETICS**

**I. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.**

1. A. excellent      B. marvellous      C. familiar      D. similar
2. A. musician      B. scientist      C. energy      D. biogas
3. A. abundant      B. wonderful      C. convenient      D. important
4. A. excellent      B. dangerous      C. plentiful      D. polluting
5. A. exercise      B. calendar      C. travelling      D. convenience

**II. Put the words in the table in the correct column according to their stress pattern.**

<i>illegal</i>	<i>celebrate</i>	<i>available</i>	<i>festival</i>	<i>consumption</i>	<i>electric</i>
<i>performance</i>	<i>performer</i>	<i>generate</i>	<i>effective</i>	<i>imagine</i>	<i>convenient</i>
<i>exhausted</i>	<i>comfortable</i>	<i>library</i>	<i>improvement</i>	<i>relative</i>	<i>fortunate</i>

Stress on 1 <sup>st</sup> syllable	Stress on 2 <sup>nd</sup> syllable

**B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR**

**I. Write the name of the type of energy in each blank based on the characteristics.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ It's a clean source of energy. Sailboats couldn't move without this power.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ It can be found in only some places of the earth. It comes from depth inside the earth.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ This energy can be dangerous. It was used to make bombs in World War II.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ They will be run out within a relatively short time. The first letters of the words are both "f".
5. \_\_\_\_\_ We can make this energy almost every day. Panels are used to create this energy.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ When it moves from a high place to a lower place, it makes energy. This energy is used to create electricity.

**II. Write sentences about what Mai will be doing at the times given. Use the future continuous.**

6.00	get up	7.00 – 8.30	have Maths lessons
6.15	shower	8.30 – 9.00	have a break
6.30	breakfast	9.00 – 10.30	have English lessons
6.45	go to school	11.00 – 11.20	have lunch

1. 6.01: She'll be getting up.
2. 6.20: \_\_\_\_\_
3. 6.35: \_\_\_\_\_
4. 6.48: \_\_\_\_\_
5. 7.10: \_\_\_\_\_
6. 8.40: \_\_\_\_\_
7. 9.10: \_\_\_\_\_
8. 11.05: \_\_\_\_\_

**III. Rewrite the questions using the future continuous. Number 1 has been done for you as an example.**

1. What time do you plan to go to bed this evening?  
→ *What time will you be going to bed this evening?*
2. How are you going to get home this afternoon?  
→ \_\_\_\_\_
3. What are you planning to do this evening?  
→ \_\_\_\_\_
4. Who do you plan to see at the weekend?  
→ \_\_\_\_\_
5. Do you intend to go out on Saturday night?  
→ \_\_\_\_\_
6. What are you going to wear to school tomorrow?  
→ \_\_\_\_\_

**C. SPEAKING**

**I. Talk about the advantages and disadvantages of each type of energy sources in the table, following the model.**

**A:** What type of energy is \_\_\_\_\_ ?

**B:** It is a renewable/ non-renewable source of energy because \_\_\_\_\_.

**A:** What are its advantages and disadvantages?

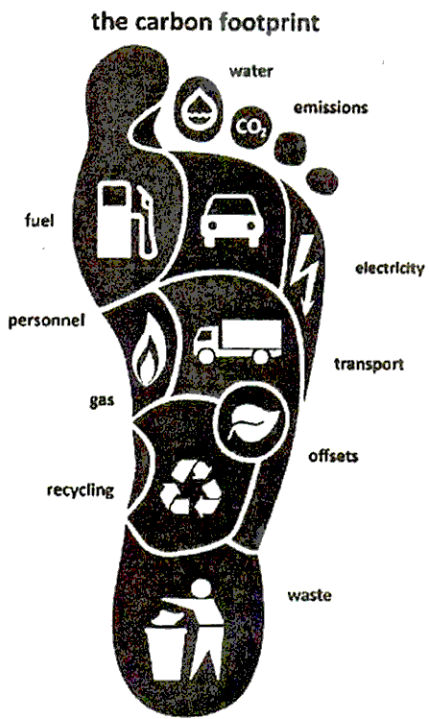
**B:** \_\_\_\_\_.

Sources of energy	Type of energy	Advantages or disadvantages
Solar energy	renewable	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– plentiful</li> <li>– clean and safe to the environment</li> <li>– solar panels on the roofs of houses can create enough energy for a home</li> </ul>
Wind energy	renewable	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– the wind is abundant</li> <li>– if the wind does not blow, there is no wind energy.</li> </ul>
Petroleum	nonrenewable	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– supply power for most machinery</li> <li>– limited, and polluted to the environment</li> </ul>

Nuclear energy	nonrenewable	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– unlimited: nuclear energy can provide enough electricity for the world's needs for hundreds of years</li> <li>– it can be very dangerous</li> </ul>
Water power (hydroelectric power)	renewable	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– unlimited, it gives energy without pollution</li> <li>– dams cost a lot of money; it may damage the environment</li> </ul>

II. Here are some specific practices that could be taken to make your carbon footprint smaller. Choose at least three that you can follow and give the reasons why they are important to reduce your carbon footprint. Practise the conversation with your partner.

1. Turn off/unplug appliances not in use
2. Install Energy-Star rated energy efficient appliances
3. Choose water-efficient appliances, they save energy, too!
4. Take shorter showers instead of baths
5. Reduce thermostat by at least two degrees
6. Limit car trips by relying on biking, walking, public transportation
7. Make Meatless Monday a habit, or change to a meat-free/plant-based diet
8. Buy locally grown agricultural products
9. Increase the amount of material that you recycle



**D. READING**

I. Read the following passage, and then tick the correct answers: true (T), or false (F).

Energy is very important in modern life. People use energy to run machines, heat and cool their homes, cook, give light, transport people and products from place to place. Most energy nowadays comes from fossil fuels such as petroleum, coal, and natural gas. However, burning fossil fuels causes pollution. In addition, if we don't find new kinds of energy, we will use up all the fossil fuels in the 21<sup>st</sup> century. Scientists are working to find other kinds of energy for the future. What might these sources of energy be?

- |  | True                     | False                    |
|--|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Energy is of great importance in modern life.                           | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2. Energy is used to produce a lot of electrical things.                   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3. Burning fossil fuels causes pollution.                                  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4. Fossil fuels are limited.   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5. Everyone tries their best to find other kinds of energy for the future. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

**II. Read the following passage, and then tick the correct answers: true (T), or false (F).**

Many people still believe that natural resources will never be used up. Actually, the world's energy resources are limited. Nobody knows exactly how much fuel is left. However, we also should use them economically and try to find out alternative sources of power. According to Professor Marvin Burnham of the New England Institute of Technology, we have to start saving coal, oil, and gas before it is too late; and solar power is the only alternative.

- |  | True                     | False                    |
|--|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Natural resources will never run out.   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2. We don't know exactly how much fuel is left.  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3. We shouldn't waste natural resources.   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4. We should find out other types of energy besides fossil fuels.                                    | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5. According to Professor Marvin Burnham, solar energy will be used as a form of alternative energy. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

**III. Fill in each blank in the following passage with ONE suitable word from the box.**

<i>students</i>	<i>bulbs</i>	<i>coal</i>	<i>off</i>	<i>rural</i>
<i>electricity</i>	<i>natural</i>	<i>energy</i>	<i>save</i>	<i>wastes</i>

With the development of science and technology, more and more (1)\_\_\_\_\_ is used every day. Nowadays, many (2)\_\_\_\_\_ areas in Vietnam have been electrified, and more (3)\_\_\_\_\_ is needed. If everyone (4)\_\_\_\_\_ energy, it will quickly run out. (5)\_\_\_\_\_ at school should learn how to (6)\_\_\_\_\_ energy, for example, they should turn (7)\_\_\_\_\_ the electric lights when they leave their classrooms.

Moreover, we may waste electricity at home if we use a lot of light (8)\_\_\_\_\_. By not wasting energy, we will save a lot of (9)\_\_\_\_\_ resources, such as (10)\_\_\_\_\_ and oil.

**E. WRITING**

**Use the cues given to write correct sentences.**

1. Almost all our energy/ come/ oil/ gas/ natural gas. We/ them/ fossil fuels.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. The earth's fossil fuels/ running out.

\_\_\_\_\_

3. Scientists/ try/ find/ other alternative sources/ energy.

\_\_\_\_\_

4. We/ use energy/ the sun, the wind, and the water.

\_\_\_\_\_

5. The sun/ supply/ all the energy/ used/ grow plants/ evaporate water/ rain/ and/ maintain/ temperature/ planet.
- 
- 
6. If we/ able/ collect solar energy/ we/ be sure/ have enough power.
- 
- 
7. Energy/ wind/ use/ centuries/ move ships, grind grain, pump water/ and/ do other forms/ work.
- 
- 
8. Recently/ wind/ use/ generate electricity.
- 
- 
9. For a long time/ people/ use water/ power machines.
- 
- 
10. Today/ water power/ mostly/ use/ generate electricity.
- 
- 

## TEST (UNIT 10)

### I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

- |                          |                                |                           |                         |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. A. <u>s</u> olar      | B. bi <u>o</u> gas             | C. hydro <u>e</u> lectric | D. env <u>i</u> ronment |
| 2. A. r <u>e</u> newable | B. <u>e</u> nergy              | C. pl <u>e</u> ntiful     | D. <u>e</u> lectric     |
| 3. A. ab <u>u</u> ndant  | B. n <u>u</u> clear            | C. t <u>r</u> uck         | D. d <u>u</u> mp        |
| 4. A. p <u>o</u> wer     | B. t <u>r</u> ans <u>p</u> ort | C. sh <u>o</u> rt         | D. r <u>e</u> port      |
| 5. A. c <u>a</u> rbon    | B. h <u>a</u> rd               | C. l <u>a</u> rge         | D. m <u>a</u> rry       |

### II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

- |                   |               |                |                 |
|-------------------|---------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 6. A. advantage   | B. atmosphere | C. motorbike   | D. generate     |
| 7. A. effective   | B. regular    | C. different   | D. serious      |
| 8. A. population  | B. education  | C. development | D. satisfaction |
| 9. A. countryside | B. natural    | C. changeable  | D. dioxide      |
| 10. A. renewable  | B. artificial | C. unfortunate | D. continuous   |

### III. Find which word does not belong to each group.

- |                     |               |              |             |
|---------------------|---------------|--------------|-------------|
| 11. A. water        | B. coal       | C. gas       | D. oil      |
| 12. A. wind         | B. wave       | C. sun       | D. coal     |
| 13. A. limited      | B. unlimited  | C. plentiful | D. abundant |
| 14. A. hydropower   | B. panels     | C. cells     | D. solar    |
| 15. A. unreasonable | B. overpriced | C. expensive | D. costly   |

#### IV. Choose the correct answers.

16. What should we do to \_\_\_\_\_ electricity?  
A. cut                      B. take                      C. save                      D. waste
17. Someone's carbon \_\_\_\_\_ is a measurement of the amount of carbon dioxide that their activities produce.  
A. effect                      B. amount                      C. footprint                      D. energy
18. \_\_\_\_\_ source of energy is the source that can't be replaced after use.  
A. Renewable                      B. Natural                      C. Effective                      D. Non-renewable
19. We are looking for cheap, clean and \_\_\_\_\_ sources of energy.  
A. effective                      B. efficient                      C. serious                      D. dangerous
20. We should put \_\_\_\_\_ on our roof for the heating and hot water.  
A. solar energy                      B. equipment                      C. cracks                      D. solar panels
21. We should use \_\_\_\_\_ light bulbs in our homes.  
A. low energy                      B. little energy                      C. a bit energy                      D. efficient
22. In my opinion, nuclear power is not only expensive but also \_\_\_\_\_ to our environment.  
A. danger                      B. dangerous                      C. risk                      D. disaster
23. Several governments try to \_\_\_\_\_ the use of fossil fuels.  
A. reduce                      B. increase                      C. waste                      D. save
24. It is a good idea to use \_\_\_\_\_ when travelling long distances.  
A. cars                      B. taxis                      C. private cars                      D. public transport
25. Wave energy is a source of \_\_\_\_\_ energy.  
A. environment friendly                      B. environmentally friendly  
C. environmental friendly                      D. environmentally friendliness
26. Remember to \_\_\_\_\_ the lights before going to bed.  
A. turn                      B. turn off                      C. turn on                      D. stop
27. A hydropower station \_\_\_\_\_ in the North of the country next year.  
A. was built                      B. were built                      C. will be built                      D. has been built
28. Biogas is \_\_\_\_\_ and cheap for cooking and heating.  
A. plenty                      B. abundant                      C. serious                      D. expensive
29. "Why is it called a \_\_\_\_\_ source?" – "Because it can be replaced easily and quickly."  
A. effective                      B. specific                      C. renewable                      D. non-renewable
30. At this time next week, we \_\_\_\_\_ a wind turbine in our garden.  
A. install                      B. installed                      C. will installed                      D. will be installing
31. Alternative sources of energy \_\_\_\_\_ developed in the near future.  
A. is                      B. was                      C. has been                      D. will be
32. Hydro power is \_\_\_\_\_ because dams cannot be built in certain areas.  
A. limited                      B. unlimited                      C. abundant                      D. enough
33. Fossil fuels are very common in our society but they \_\_\_\_\_ the environment.  
A. renew                      B. provide                      C. waste                      D. pollute
34. By the middle of the 21<sup>st</sup> century, people in developing countries \_\_\_\_\_ more renewable energy.  
A. uses                      B. will be using                      C. used                      D. have used
35. The wind, the sun, and the wave are some types of \_\_\_\_\_ sources of energy.  
A. changeable                      B. alternative                      C. cheap                      D. costly



**V. Complete the sentences with the suitable word from the box.**

*avoid*

*invested*

*generate*

*reduce*

*converted*

36. Solar power can be \_\_\_\_\_ into electricity.  
37. Fossil fuels can be used to \_\_\_\_\_ electricity or drive big machinery.  
38. Use electricity economically so that we can \_\_\_\_\_ our electricity bills.  
39. We should \_\_\_\_\_ using cars or motorbikes for short trips.  
40. Businesses have \_\_\_\_\_ more money in renewable energy in recent years.

**VI. Complete the sentences with the suitable verb from the box in the future continuous.**

*speak*

*work*

*play*

*wear*

*arrive*

41. What clothes do you think she \_\_\_\_\_ when she arrives?  
42. My uncle can't come to your party tomorrow night because he \_\_\_\_\_ at night.  
43. Linda \_\_\_\_\_ in Ha Noi around March.  
44. You \_\_\_\_\_ French in Quebec because local people do it, too.  
45. At this time tomorrow evening, I \_\_\_\_\_ computer games in my bedroom.

**VII. Change the following sentences into the Passive Voice.**

46. People will develop alternative sources of energy.  
Alternative sources \_\_\_\_\_  
47. With that device people will change the wave energy into electricity.  
With that device the wave energy \_\_\_\_\_  
48. People will construct more wind turbines in that area to produce electricity.  
More wind turbines \_\_\_\_\_  
49. Scientists will find solutions to reduce pollution in our city.  
Solutions \_\_\_\_\_  
50. Governments will make more regulations to reduce industrial pollution.  
More regulations \_\_\_\_\_

**VIII. Rearrange the sentences to make a suitable conversation by writing the correct number (from 51 to 55) in the box.**

51. \_\_\_\_\_ A. Because our major sources of energy are running out while the solar energy is abundant and unlimited.  
52. \_\_\_\_\_ B. I know it is also clean and safe to the environment. But does it cost a lot of money to install the solar panels on the roofs?  
53. \_\_\_\_\_ C. I don't think so. The solar panels are becoming cheaper and easy to install.  
54. \_\_\_\_\_ D. I think that solar energy can be an alternative source of energy in the near future.  
55. \_\_\_\_\_ E. Why do you think so?

**IX. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.**

There is now increasing concern about the world's energy (56)\_\_\_\_, particularly about those involving fossil (57)\_\_\_\_. In less than a hundred years we shall probably use up all the present (58)\_\_\_\_ of oil and gas. The world's coal reserves should last longer but, once used, these cannot be (59)\_\_\_\_. It is important, therefore, that we should develop such (60)\_\_\_\_ sources of energy as solar energy as well as water and wind power, classed as renewable energy.

- |                    |                |                  |               |
|--------------------|----------------|------------------|---------------|
| 56. A. possessions | B. resources   | C. goods         | D. materials  |
| 57. A. fuels       | B. powers      | C. forms         | D. energies   |
| 58. A. findings    | B. productions | C. amounts       | D. sources    |
| 59. A. updated     | B. repeated    | C. renewed       | D. produced   |
| 60. A. traditional | B. alternative | C. revolutionary | D. surprising |

**X. Read the speech, and then tick the correct answers: true (T), or false (F).**

"My name is Professor Roberts, and tonight, I'm going to tell you how to save energy in your homes. Most of us use too much energy. You can reduce this amount by: using low energy light bulbs, using solar energy, turning off unnecessary lights, preparing food before turning on the cooker. If you follow these simple rules, you will not only save energy but also keep the environment cleaner."

- |   | True                     | False                    |
|---|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 61. The professor tells us about the ways to cut down on wastes of energy in our offices. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 62. Almost everyone consumes too much energy.   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 63. Although solar energy is clean, the lecturer doesn't not advise us to use it.         | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 64. The speaker gives four simple rules.  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 65. According to the speaker, energy will be saved.                                       | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

**XI. Read the passage, and then choose the best answer.**

Almost all our energy comes from oil, coal, and natural gas. We call them fossil fuels. The earth's fossil fuels are running out. What will happen when there is no oil, coal and gas on the earth?

Scientists are trying to find and use other alternative sources of energy. We can use energy from the sun, the wind, and the water.

Solar energy is unlimited. The sun supplies all the energy used to grow plants, to evaporate water for rain, and to maintain the temperature of the planet. All are necessary for human life. If we are able to collect solar energy, we will be sure to have this **abundant** source of power.

66. What are the other words or phrase for fossil fuels?  
 A. oil                      B. oil, gas, natural gas    C. natural gas              D. coal
67. Natural sources of energy are energy from \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. the sun, wind, water    B. water                      C. wind                      D. the sun

68. From which do plants on the earth get energy?  
A. the moon      B. the sun      C. stars      D. the Mars
69. We are asking the question, "What will happen when there is no oil, coal, and gas on the earth?" because \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. we are looking for other alternative sources of energy  
B. we are looking forward to seeing great changes  
C. we are now depending so much on oil, coal, and natural gas  
D. other sources of energy can come from the sun, wind, and water
70. The word "**abundant**" in the passage is closest in meaning with \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. natural      B. necessary      C. plentiful      D. limited

**XII. Use the cues given to write correct sentences.**

71. We/ looking/ cheap, clean, effective source/ energy/ not cause pollution or waste natural resources.  
\_\_\_\_\_
72. At present/ most/ our electricity/ come/ use/ coal, gas, oil or nuclear power.  
\_\_\_\_\_
73. This power/ could/ provide/ sun.  
\_\_\_\_\_
74. One percent/ solar energy/ reach/ earth/ enough/ provide power/ the total population.  
\_\_\_\_\_
75. Many countries/ already using/ solar energy.  
\_\_\_\_\_
76. Solar panels/ place/ the roof/ a house/ and/ sun's energy/ use/ heat water.  
\_\_\_\_\_
77. The energy/ store/ a number of days.  
\_\_\_\_\_
78. On/ cloudy/ you/ use/ solar energy/ too.  
\_\_\_\_\_
79. Viet Nam/ an advanced technology/ solar energy.  
\_\_\_\_\_
80. Cars/ use solar energy/ gas/ by the year 2030.  
\_\_\_\_\_

**A. PHONETICS**

Put the questions into the correct column, then practise saying them.

1. What problems do you think future transport will have?
2. Does a jet pack take a lot of space?
3. Have you ever heard of bullet trains?
4. What means of transport do you think will be used in the future?
5. Do you think we will use driverless cars in the near future?
6. How fast can it travel?
7. Why don't many people use the personal hover scooter?
8. Will pollution be much worse?

Rising intonation ↗	Falling intonation ↘

**B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR**

I. Complete the sentences with the words or phrases in the box.

<i>fly</i>	<i>sail</i>	<i>got off</i>	<i>a traffic jam</i>	<i>exercise</i>	<i>got on</i>
<i>driving</i>	<i>seat belt</i>	<i>cycle</i>	<i>ride</i>	<i>parked</i>	<i>train</i>

1. I learned to \_\_\_\_\_ a bike when I was six.
2. David \_\_\_\_\_ the taxi and gave the driver the address of his hotel.
3. "Are you going by train?" "No, I'm \_\_\_\_\_."
4. Tom \_\_\_\_\_ the bus at the wrong bus stop, so he walked from there to school.
5. She has to \_\_\_\_\_ thousands of miles every year for her job.
6. Cycling is my favourite form of \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Do you know how to fasten your \_\_\_\_\_?
8. Wouldn't it be quicker to go by \_\_\_\_\_?
9. He managed to \_\_\_\_\_ the boat between the rocks.
10. I was stuck in \_\_\_\_\_ for an hour yesterday.
11. A red truck was \_\_\_\_\_ in front of the house.
12. I usually \_\_\_\_\_ home through the park.

**II. Complete the predictions with *will* or *won't*. (*will* for ✓, and *won't* for ✗)**

**In 2050....**

1. People \_\_\_\_\_ cook. (✗)
2. People \_\_\_\_\_ grow vegetables in their homes. (✓)
3. Restaurants \_\_\_\_\_ sell healthy fast food. (✓)
4. People \_\_\_\_\_ eat meat. (✗)
5. Farmers \_\_\_\_\_ have animals. (✗)
6. Food \_\_\_\_\_ be easy to grow. (✓)
7. Food \_\_\_\_\_ be cheap. (✓)
8. People \_\_\_\_\_ take a lot of vitamins. (✓)
9. Vietnamese food \_\_\_\_\_ be more popular than Chinese food. (✓)
10. People \_\_\_\_\_ buy dinner from machines. (✗)

**III. Complete the sentences with *will* or *will not* (*won't*).**

1. In a few years everyone \_\_\_\_\_ know how to use the Internet.
2. In the future people \_\_\_\_\_ go to school or university. They \_\_\_\_\_ study at home using their computer.
3. Some teachers are worried that computers \_\_\_\_\_ take their jobs one day.
4. In a few years, everyone \_\_\_\_\_ speak English.
5. Chinese \_\_\_\_\_ become the global language in the near future; it is English as far as I know.

**IV. Complete the conversation with the correct form of the verb in brackets.**

**Linda:** Do you want to go on holiday to Viet Nam with me?

**Susan:** I don't know.

**Linda:** Come on. We (1. have) \_\_\_\_\_ a great time. We (2. eat) \_\_\_\_\_ good food. We (3. meet) \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of nice people. Your Vietnamese (4. get) \_\_\_\_\_ better and we (5. not spend) \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of money.

**Susan:** Well...

**Linda:** It (6. not rain) \_\_\_\_\_ and we (7. go) \_\_\_\_\_ to Ha Noi and we (8. buy) \_\_\_\_\_ some cool clothes.

**Susan:** I think we (9. enjoy) \_\_\_\_\_ beautiful landscapes in Viet Nam.

**Linda:** And we (10. try) \_\_\_\_\_ *pho* and other traditional Vietnamese dishes.

**V. Choose the correct completion in the brackets.**

1. **A:** Nick really likes (his/ him) \_\_\_\_\_ new bicycle. It is very light and fast. How do you like (your/ yours) \_\_\_\_\_?

**B:** (My/Mine) \_\_\_\_\_ is cheap, but it's very reliable.

2. **A:** Excuse me. Is this (your/ yours) \_\_\_\_\_ umbrella?

**B:** I don't have an umbrella. Ask Ken. Perhaps it is (him/ his) \_\_\_\_\_.

3. **A:** When do (your/ yours) \_\_\_\_\_ classes begin?

**B:** September 2<sup>nd</sup>. How about (your/ yours) \_\_\_\_\_? When do (your/ yours) \_\_\_\_\_ begin?

**A:** (My/ Mine) \_\_\_\_\_ begin on August 23<sup>rd</sup>.

4. **A:** Mary, (your/ yours) \_\_\_\_\_ spaghetti sauce is delicious!  
**B:** Thank you, but it's not as good as (your/ yours) \_\_\_\_\_.  
**A:** Oh, no. (Your/ Yours) \_\_\_\_\_ is much better. It tastes as good as Anna's.  
**B:** Do you like Anna's spaghetti sauce? I think (her/ hers) \_\_\_\_\_ is too salty.  
**A:** Maybe. (My/ Mine) \_\_\_\_\_ mother makes good spaghetti sauce too.  
(Her/ Hers) \_\_\_\_\_ is thick and rich.  
**B:** In truth, making spaghetti sauce is easy, but everyone's sauce is just a little different.

**VI. Match the beginnings (1-10) with the endings (a-j), and then write the answer in each blank.**

### Predictions for the year 2050

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| _____ 1. People will live                             | a) mobile phones in our ears.                       |
| _____ 2. We will fly                                  | b) against other countries.                         |
| _____ 3. Someone will make                            | c) computers to learn. They won't go to school.     |
| _____ 4. We will have                                 | d) on other planets.                                |
| _____ 5. Everyone will work                           | e) at home.   |
| _____ 6. There won't be any schools so there won't be | f) petrol any more.                                 |
| _____ 7. Students will use                            | g) from the world.                                  |
| _____ 8. Countries won't fight                        | h) to the Moon.                                     |
| _____ 9. Lots of animals will disappear               | i) any teachers.                                    |
| _____ 10. Cars won't use                              | j) a car that can fly, probably a Japanese company. |

**VII. Read the sentences below. Which statements are facts? Which are the opinions? Put them into the correct columns.**

- I'm sure robots will cook and clean for us, and we won't do any housework.
- Machines will do everything, then we have nothing to do and get bored.
- Light can travel at the speed of 300,000km/h.
- When Michelle does school projects, she usually finds photos on the Internet.
- I think people will have holidays on the moon, but many people won't go because it's too expensive.
- In 20 years, computers will talk to all the machines in our houses.
- I think everyone will ride bikes, and people won't drive cars any more.
- There won't be many computers in schools, but we will have more robots.
- Nick goes online every morning.
- In the future, people will use driverless cars to go to work.

Facts	Opinions

## C. SPEAKING

I. Put the sentences in the correct order to form a suitable conversation by writing the correct number in each blank, then practise the conversation.

- \_\_\_\_\_ **Nick:** We went up the Eiffel Tower, then we had lunch in Montmartre.
- \_\_\_\_\_ **Lisa:** Great! Did you like it? Did you go by car and ferry? How long did it take?
- \_\_\_\_\_ **Nick:** No, we didn't. We didn't have enough time.
- \_\_\_\_\_ **Lisa:** Did you take a boat trip on the Seine?
- \_\_\_\_\_ **Nick:** I went to Paris for the weekend with my parents.
- \_\_\_\_\_ **Lisa:** Hi, Nick. I didn't see you at the youth club yesterday. Where were you?
- \_\_\_\_\_ **Nick:** It was really great – or 'magtifique' as they say in Paris. We didn't take the ferry, we went by Eurostar. There was a special offer.
- \_\_\_\_\_ **Lisa:** What did you do in Paris?

II. Make short exchanges about travelling in the future, using prediction with *will* or *won't*. number 0 has been done for you as an example.

0. people/ travel by rocket/ Yes.  
**A:** Will people travel by rocket?  
**B:** Yes, they will.
1. regulations for flying cars/ Yes.  
**A:** \_\_\_\_\_  
**B:** \_\_\_\_\_
2. driverless cars/ popular in the next decade/ Yes.  
**A:** \_\_\_\_\_  
**B:** \_\_\_\_\_
3. more accidents in the sky/ No.  
**A:** \_\_\_\_\_  
**B:** \_\_\_\_\_

4. all vehicles/ solar energy/ Yes.

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

5. a kind of train in the sky to carry a lot of passengers/ No.

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

6. driverless cars/ prevent/ accidents/ Yes.

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

7. people/ submarines/ travel between undersea cities/ No.

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

## D. READING

I. Read the text and answer the following questions.

### *Up, up and away!*

Martin Halstead is only 19, but he already owns an airline company. Alpha One Airways will make its first flight on 14 December this year. The plane will fly from the Isle of Man (an island between England and Ireland) to Edinburgh, the capital of Scotland. It won't carry a lot of passengers because it is a small plane. The journey will take about 45 minutes. Tickets will be cheap and passengers won't get any food or drink on the flight. Will the company make money? Nobody knows – but most people think that Martin Halstead will be successful one day.

1. When will Alpha One Airways make its first flight?

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Where will the plane fly from?

\_\_\_\_\_

3. Where will it fly to?

\_\_\_\_\_

4. Will it carry a lot of passengers? Why or why not?

\_\_\_\_\_

5. How long will the journey take?

\_\_\_\_\_

6. Will the passengers get any food or drink?

\_\_\_\_\_

II. Read the text, and then answer the questions.

It is a computer drawing of the plane of the future. British engineers and scientists have published plans for a new hypersonic plane called the A2. It will be very fast. At the moment, a flight from London in the UK to Sydney in Australia takes about twenty-one hours but with the A2 the same flight will take about four hours.



The flight will fly at 4,500 kilometres per hour and will fly at an altitude of over 10,000 metres.

It will carry 300 passengers but it won't have any windows because scientists haven't found glass that is strong enough. It will be better for the environment than other planes because the engines won't produce gases that cause pollution.

In the future, will people travel from London to Australia for the weekend? It's possible! But how much will a ticket cost? The planners say that it won't be very expensive – about £2,000. The A2 will be ready for its first flight in 2020.

1. How long does it take the A2 plane to fly from London to Sydney?

---

2. What is the speed of the plane?

---

3. What is the altitude of the flight?

---

4. How many passengers can it carry?

---

5. How much does a ticket for the flight from London to Sydney cost?

---

### III. Read the following passage, and then tick the correct answers: true (T), or false (F).

Thinking about how we will be travelling in 10 or 20 years is very interesting. Will we still be using planes or will we be flying our cars from Paris to London? Here are some suggestions.

#### *SkyTrain*

Currently being developed at NASA, SkyTrain looks like the monorail at Disney World. Moving at 240km/h and using small amount of energy, it could be the future of city transportation. SkyTrain has the passenger capacity of a 6-lane highway.

#### *Flying cars*

Zhu Wenxi and Lai Zexin, Chinese students, have designed a solar-powered flying car that doesn't need a runway to take off. If you have about 2 hundred thousand dollars, you will own this vehicle soon.

#### *An electric minibus*

The minibus Cameo, designed by Martin Pes, can carry 32 passengers but it is small enough to get its way out of a traffic jam. Its electric motor and low weight mean that it can be recharged in seconds while stopping and it has zero emission.

#### *An eco-taxi*

Taxis are bad for the environment and traffic jams. We enter the eco-taxi, and individual taxis form a train powered by solar panels.

- |  | True                     | False                    |
|--|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. SkyTrain is fast but cannot be used as a means of transportation in the city. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2. Flying cars designed by two Chinese students run on solar energy.             | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3. Flying cars don't need a long runway to take off.                             | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4. Because it is small, an electric minibus can avoid traffic jams.              | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5. Several eco-taxis can form a line moving together, using solar energy.        | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

## E. WRITING

Write a short paragraph about a future means of transport, using the cues given.

### *Safe, environmentally friendly cars*

- Cars/ the future/ do less damage/ the environment/ and/ be equipped/ better safety devices/ limit/ number/ accidents and deaths.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Engines/ be powered/ by/ rubbish-fuelled reactor/to make use/ all the waste we produce.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Petrol/ be replaced/ fuel cells/ separate hydrogen/ oxygen/ water.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Cars/ have sensors/ detect pedestrians/ other cars/ and/ have/ air cushions.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Vehicles/ "talk"/ each other/ regulate flow/ it/ mean/ end/ traffic jams.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Cars/ powered by fuel cells/ already developed.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- We/ see/ this type of cars/ the roads/ twenty years.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Environmental and safety improvements/ popular soon.  
\_\_\_\_\_

## TEST (UNIT 11)

### I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

- |                                |                              |                       |                             |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. A. <u>tr</u> affic          | B. <u>s</u> ame              | C. <u>cr</u> ash      | D. <u>jam</u>               |
| 2. A. <u>l</u> et              | B. <u>j</u> et               | C. <u>v</u> ehicle    | D. <u>su</u> ccess          |
| 3. A. <u>f</u> oot             | B. <u>s</u> cooter           | C. <u>sh</u> oot      | D. <u>fo</u> od             |
| 4. A. <u>s</u> ky              | B. <u>f</u> ly               | C. <u>b</u> y         | D. <u>h</u> ymn             |
| 5. A. <u>v</u> eh <u>ic</u> le | B. <u>r</u> e <u>h</u> earse | C. <u>h</u> elicopter | D. <u>p</u> er <u>h</u> aps |

## THEO CH

### II. Find which word does not belong to each group.

- |                  |               |              |              |
|------------------|---------------|--------------|--------------|
| 6. A. helicopter | B. plane      | C. flying    | D. cars      |
| 7. A. underwater | B. taxi       | C. submarine | D. ocean     |
| 8. A. man        | B. driverless | C. pilotless | D. automatic |
| 9. A. ship       | B. boat       | C. sailor    | D. train     |
| 10. A. drive     | B. pedal      | C. ride      | D. sail      |

### III. Choose the correct answers.

11. People won't use flying cars \_\_\_\_\_ the year 2050.
- |           |          |           |          |
|-----------|----------|-----------|----------|
| A. before | B. after | C. during | D. until |
|-----------|----------|-----------|----------|

12. The city is facing serious \_\_\_\_\_ problems.  
 A. pollution                      B. polluted                      C. pollute                      D. pollutant
13. We believe that urban transport pods can travel \_\_\_\_\_ around 30kph.  
 A. with                      B. at                      C. in                      D. on
14. Do you think the \_\_\_\_\_ price will increase next month?  
 A. fossil fuels                      B. gases                      C. fuel                      D. natural gases
15. We will use more \_\_\_\_\_ energy in the future.  
 A. solar                      B. sunny                      C. sun                      D. sunlight
16. A jet pack doesn't \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of space.  
 A. have                      B. bring                      C. take                      D. occur
17. Which \_\_\_\_\_ of transport do you think will be used in the future?  
 A. mean                      B. meaning                      C. meanings                      D. means
18. We are looking for types of vehicles that help us to avoid \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. traffic                      B. traffic jams                      C. rush hours                      D. walking
19. The Segway, which is a \_\_\_\_\_ vehicle, will be a success.  
 A. two-wheels                      B. two wheels                      C. two wheel                      D. two-wheeled
20. With the Segway, the driver pulls the handle to go back or pushes it to go \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. forward                      B. backward                      C. round                      D. fly
21. I think we \_\_\_\_\_ have electric taxis very soon.  
 A. may                      B. might                      C. will                      D. would
22. With teleportation, you disappear at a place, and then \_\_\_\_\_ in another place seconds later.  
 A. appears                      B. appeared                      C. reappear                      D. reappears
23. Every day over 1,000 new cars add to the city and the city of over 20 million people is getting more and more \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. expensive                      B. famous                      C. difficult                      D. gridlocked
24. My brother and I often come to school \_\_\_\_\_ foot.  
 A. at                      B. in                      C. by                      D. on
25. Skycycling tubes will be easy \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. drive                      B. to drive                      C. ride                      D. to ride
26. The white cat is Helen's, and the black cat is \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. my                      B. I                      C. mine                      D. of mine
27. We try to make the future green by using vehicles or kinds of energy that are \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. environmentally friendly                      B. environment friendly  
 C. environmentally friendship                      D. environmental friendly
28. This is Linda's hat, and those shoes are \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. her                      B. hers                      C. our                      D. their
29. It will be \_\_\_\_\_ to ride a jet pack in bad weather because it doesn't have a roof.  
 A. enjoyable                      B. pleasant                      C. unpleasant                      D. comfortable
30. A sky safety system can help cars to \_\_\_\_\_ traffic jams and crashes.  
 A. prevent                      B. have                      C. use                      D. take

**IV. Match the word or phrase with their meaning and write the answer in each blank.**

31.	_____	Driverless car	A. not harmful to the environment
32.	_____	Jet pack	B. an aircraft in which the energy required for propulsion is collected by panels of solar cells put on the wings
33.	_____	Slidewalk	C. the physical body disappears from one location and reappears in a different spot
34.	_____	Environmentally friendly	D. a high-speed passenger train, as on certain routes in Japan
35.	_____	Teleportation	E. a rail-based transportation system based on a single rail
36.	_____	Solar cell	F. a device, usually worn on the back, that are pushed by jets of escaping gases to let a single user to fly
37.	_____	Solar-powered aircraft	G. an automobile that can travel on roads and can take off, fly and land as an aircraft
38.	_____	Monorail	H. a robotic vehicle that is designed to travel between locations without a human operator
39.	_____	Bullet train	I. a cell that converts solar energy into electricity
40.	_____	Flying car	J. a moving pavement to support a large number of travelers

**V. "Rocketship Three" is a new spaceplane which will carry tourists into space. Look at the facts below, and make the questions and answers, using *will* or *will be able to* and the cues given.**

**See the earth from space!**

- |                                   |                              |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 41. Name: <i>Rocketship Three</i> | 46. Altitude: 110 kilometres |
| 42. Producer: Airbus              | 47. Speed: 4,200 kph         |
| 43. First flight: 2020            | 48. Ticket: £150,000         |
| 44. Number of passengers: 6       | 49. A meal: ✗                |
| 45. Trip time: 25 hours           | 50. Windows: ✓               |

*Answers:*

41. What/ name/ spaceplane?

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

42. What/ the producer?

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

43. When/ first flight/ be?

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

44. How many passengers/ carry?

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

45. How long/ trip/ take?

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

46. How high/ spaceplane/ fly?

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

47. How fast/ spaceplane/ fly?

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

48. How much/ ticket/ cost?

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

49. people/ have/ a meal/ flight?

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

50. the spaceplane/ have/ windows?

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

**VI. Complete the sentences with *will* or *will not (won't)* and a suitable verb to make them true in your opinion.**

51. In ten years people \_\_\_\_\_ on other planets.

52. One day people \_\_\_\_\_ on holiday on the moon.

53. Flying \_\_\_\_\_ cheaper in the future.

54. People in the future \_\_\_\_\_ in cities under the sea.

55. There \_\_\_\_\_ more wars in the future, and we will live in a peaceful world.

56. In twenty years' time, there \_\_\_\_\_ more traffic than now.

57. Our children and grandchildren \_\_\_\_\_ until they are over one hundred.

58. Driverless cars \_\_\_\_\_ cheap so that many people can afford them.

59. Flying cars that can change into helicopters \_\_\_\_\_ a runway to take off.

60. Future planes \_\_\_\_\_ faster than the speed of sound.

**VII. Choose the correct completion in the brackets.**

61. Is this (your/ yours) \_\_\_\_\_ pen?

62. Please give this dictionary to Mary. It's (her/ hers) \_\_\_\_\_.

63. A: Don't forget (your/ yours)\_\_\_\_\_ hat. Here.  
 B: No, that's not (my/ mine)\_\_\_\_\_ hat. (My/ Mine)\_\_\_\_\_ is green.
64. A: Please take this wood carving as a present from me. Here you are. It's (your/ yours)\_\_\_\_\_.  
 B: Thank you.
65. A: Isn't that the Smith's car? That one over there. The blue one.  
 B: No, that's not (their/ theirs)\_\_\_\_\_. (Their/ Theirs)\_\_\_\_\_ car is dark blue.

**VIII. Read the following passage, and then tick the correct answers: true (T), or false (F).**

'Sky Whale' is a plane with four engines that can carries over 700 people. The airplane will exist for short distances between cities. The technology will use eco-engines with energy recovery systems which are able to feed back to the planes themselves.

With a capacity to transport a large number of passengers, like a train of high speed, 'Sky Whale' will be a safer type of planes for the future.

We will also have supersonic planes which are transcontinental or transoceanic. They can fly at very high altitudes more than 30,000 metres and at record speeds. The engines which can change according to the situations are called intelligent engines.

- |   | True                     | False                    |
|---|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 66. 'Sky Whale' can carry a large number of passengers.   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 67. The airplane will be used for long distances between cities because it has four engines.      | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 68. 'Sky Whale' can travel at a high speed.   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 69. Transcontinental planes can fly at the maximum altitude of 3,000 metres and at record speeds. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 70. Intelligent engines are the ones that can change according to the situations.                 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

**IX. Read the text, and answer the questions.**

AeroMobil is a beautiful flying car. It can be changed very quickly from a car to a plane - only about 15 minutes, and it can give you freedom to move. AeroMobil is a flying car that can use roads for cars and runways for planes. As a car, it can fit in any standard parking space, use regular gasoline, and can be used in road traffic just like any other car. As a plane, it can use any airport in the world, but can also take off and land using any grass strip or paved surface just a few hundred meters long.

71. What is AeroMobil?
-

72. What can it give you?

---

73. How long does it take AeroMobil to change from a car to a plane?

---

74. What characteristics does AeroMobil have as a car?

---

75. Where can AeroMobil take off or land besides an airport?

---

**X. Write a short paragraph about a future means of transport, using the cues given.**

***Driverless cabs***

76. Computer-controlled pods/ take/ you/ wherever/ you/ want along a fixed route/ whenever/ want/ go.

---

---

77. People/ ride/ speed of 25mph.

---

78. There/ be little wait/ for use/ the cabs/ will leave from stations/ and/ be accessed/ by pre-paid smartcards.

---

---

79. The cabs/ which/ travel/ a 1.5m-wide track/ use 75% less energy per passenger/ a car/ and/ 50% less/ a bus.

---

---

80. They/ already test/ 160 driverless cabs/ since 2006/ and/ many investors/ politicians/ support/ the idea.

---

---

**A. PHONETICS**

I. Put the word into the correct column according the stress pattern.

<i>density</i>	<i>pollution</i>	<i>population</i>	<i>populated</i>	<i>crowded</i>
<i>overcrowded</i>	<i>imagine</i>	<i>homeless</i>	<i>criminal</i>	<i>problem</i>
<i>service</i>	<i>slavery</i>	<i>economy</i>	<i>explosion</i>	<i>affect</i>
<i>attract</i>	<i>behind</i>	<i>megacity</i>	<i>producer</i>	<i>hunger</i>
<i>homeless</i>	<i>spacious</i>	<i>poverty</i>	<i>millionaire</i>	<i>electricity</i>

Stress on the 1 <sup>st</sup> syllable	Stress on the 2 <sup>nd</sup> syllable	Stress on the 3 <sup>rd</sup> syllable
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____

II. Put the words in the table in the correct column according to their stress pattern.

<i>answer</i>	<i>offer</i>	<i>contrast</i>	<i>decrease</i>	<i>export</i>	<i>progress</i>
<i>visit</i>	<i>travel</i>	<i>record</i>	<i>present</i>	<i>protest</i>	<i>desert</i>
<i>produce</i>	<i>suspect</i>	<i>promise</i>	<i>picture</i>	<i>advice</i>	<i>reply</i>

General rules (stress on the 1 <sup>st</sup> syllable for the noun, and stress on the 2 <sup>nd</sup> for the verb )	Exceptions (the noun and the verb have the same stress pattern)
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

**B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR**

I. Match the word or phrase with their meaning and write the answer in each blank.

Answers	A	B
_____	1. slum	A. the number of people in a place in relation to its area
_____	2. overpopulation	B. a market usually held outdoors
_____	3. overcrowded	C. a very large city, typically one with a population of over 10 million
_____	4. malnutrition	D. the sudden increase in the number of people in a country or in the world



_____	5. poverty	E. an area of a city where living conditions are extremely bad
_____	6. megacity	F. with too many people
_____	7. density	G. large in size
_____	8. spacious	H. the state of having very little money
_____	9. flea market	I. a situation in which too many people live in a certain area
_____	10. population explosion	J. bad health that is the result of not having enough food

## II. Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

<i>drought</i>	<i>megacity</i>	<i>healthcare</i>	<i>peaceful</i>	<i>shortages</i>
<i>growth</i>	<i>crime</i>	<i>earnings</i>	<i>disease</i>	<i>accommodation</i>

- The first symptom of the \_\_\_\_\_ is a very high temperature.
- The long hot summer has led to serious water \_\_\_\_\_.
- To have hundreds of homeless people sleeping in the streets of a rich city like London is a \_\_\_\_\_.
- Average \_\_\_\_\_ for skilled workers are rising.
- We lived in rented \_\_\_\_\_ before buying this house.
- \_\_\_\_\_ has affected many countries in Africa after a long period of dry weather.
- Nuclear power can be used for \_\_\_\_\_ or military purposes.
- The government is trying to limit population \_\_\_\_\_.
- A \_\_\_\_\_ is a very large city with big population.
- \_\_\_\_\_ workers who offer medical care to others are some of the lowest paid people in the country.

## III. Write sentences to make comparison between New York and London, using the words: *more*, or *fewer*.

	New York	London
<b>Population:</b>	9 million	7 million
<b>National holidays:</b>	7 days	14 days
<b>High buildings:</b>	many	a few
<b>Parks in downtown:</b>	1	5
<b>Districts:</b>	27	11
<b>Bridges:</b>	61	34

Examples:

(population) New York has **more people than** London. London has **fewer people than** New York.

1. (national holidays) \_\_\_\_\_

2. (high buildings) \_\_\_\_\_

3. (parks) \_\_\_\_\_
4. (districts) \_\_\_\_\_
5. (bridges) \_\_\_\_\_

**IV. Fill in each blank with *fewer* or *less*.**

1. Ba works \_\_\_\_\_ hours than Hoa a day.
2. Ba spends \_\_\_\_\_ money on books than Nam.
3. They are very tired. They can do \_\_\_\_\_ exercises this evening.
4. I am very tired, too. I will do \_\_\_\_\_ work tonight.
5. They get \_\_\_\_\_ money than us.
6. Hoa likes her new life in Ha Noi now. She writes \_\_\_\_\_ letters home.
7. You should spend \_\_\_\_\_ time playing computer games.
8. They have \_\_\_\_\_ days off than anyone in the factory.
9. Lan drinks \_\_\_\_\_ water than Hoa a day.
10. There are \_\_\_\_\_ trees along the streets in the new town.

**V. Put a tag question at the end of the sentences.**

1. You don't like pollution, \_\_\_\_\_?
2. It's hot today, \_\_\_\_\_?
3. You're waiting for your letter, \_\_\_\_\_?
4. We had a good time, \_\_\_\_\_?
5. You won't tell anyone, \_\_\_\_\_?
6. We don't have to go yet, \_\_\_\_\_?
7. You haven't gone to Rio de Janeiro, \_\_\_\_\_?
8. They didn't like the film, \_\_\_\_\_?
9. The idea can change the situation, \_\_\_\_\_?
10. You need an English-Vietnamese dictionary, \_\_\_\_\_?

**C. SPEAKING**

**I. Rearrange the conversation between Nick and Lan in the correct order, and write the correct number in each blank. Number 1 has been done for you.**

_____	A. Yes, nice beaches, Lan. I enjoyed swimming and lying on the beach. But it also has many social problems, such as violence, crime, etc.
_____	B. The gap between the rich and the poor? What do you mean?
_____	C. It sounds interesting. Which cities did you go to?
_____	D. Don't worry so much, Lan. Researches show that violence has declined in recent years.
_____	E. Oh, I see. I think other cities in Brazil also face some social problems too.
_____	F. Oh, it sounds very gloomy now, Nick.
<b>1</b>	G. Have you ever been to Brazil, Nick?
_____	H. Well, that is wealthy people live in mansions – very big houses while poor people live in slums in the suburbs of Rio de Janeiro.

—	I. I went to Brasilia, the capital, and the biggest city – Rio de Janeiro.
—	J. Yes, social issues. And I could see the gap between the rich and the poor.
—	K. Yes, I have. I went there with my family three years ago.
—	L. Rio de Janeiro? Well, it's a big city with beautiful beaches and landscapes.

**II. Complete the gaps of the conversation with the phrases or sentences given below.**

- A. in which motorists will be persuaded to use public means of transport
- B. a kind of paint that can absorb pollution has been used widely
- C. Manila's streets are a danger to pedestrians and cyclists.
- D. Should we bring the matter up in the next meeting of our school club?
- E. it's a megacity in that country
- F. because it is better now

**Lan:** Nick, I have read a book about Manila, the capital of the Philippines.

**Nick:** Oh, (1)\_\_\_\_\_. Would you like to come to Manila one day?

**Lan:** I'm not sure. Manila faces a lot of problems. The air in Manila is very polluted.

**Nick:** Does the government have any solutions to that?

**Lan:** (2)\_\_\_\_\_ in the streets and public places. Scientists did researches on that kind of paint and they believe it will improve the situation soon.

**Nick:** Really? Can we apply that in our school? (3)\_\_\_\_\_?

**Lan:** That's a good idea. And we should have a discussion about that.

**Nick:** Is there another problem in Manila, Lan?

**Lan:** Yes, it's about transport. The pavements are very narrow, and often crowded with pedestrians. (4)\_\_\_\_\_.

**Nick:** Are there any ways to solve it?

**Lan:** Yes, there will be more bike lanes and a "road revolution" (5)\_\_\_\_\_.

**Nick:** It sounds good, Lan.

**Lan:** I hope that more people in our city use public transport more often (6)\_\_\_\_\_.

**Nick:** I agree with you, Lan.

**D. READING**

**I. Read the following passage, and then tick the correct answers: true (T), or false (F).**

Thousands of people in Calcutta, India, have no jobs and no proper homes. They live in homes made of mats, boxes, and rusty sheets of tin. Many people have to camp permanently in the railway stations, cooking, eating, sleeping and feeding their babies there. Babies are born in the streets and people die there too.

As many as seventeen out of every hundred families live in the streets, having nowhere to go. Many of these people are sick because of a hot and damp climate. Although the

government tries hard to provide houses, schools, and medical services, it can hardly keep up with the increasing population.

	True	False
1. Many people in Calcutta live in bad conditions because they have no jobs.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2. Many people live in slums made of anything they can find.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3. Babies from poor families are taken care of by the local government.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4. Seventy percent of the families in Calcutta have to live in the streets.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5. The local government makes efforts to help poor families but it cannot solve the problem successfully.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

## II. Read the text, and then answer the questions below.

Approximately one-sixth of the world's population now live in shanty towns, which are seen as "breeding grounds" for social problems such as crime, drug addiction, alcoholism, poverty and unemployment.

The development of megacities brings enormous challenges to governments, social and environmental planners, architects, engineers and the inhabitants of the megacities. Just one example: the London population grew from one million to eight million people in 150 years, while the population of Mexico City grew from one million to over 15 million people in only 50 years.

No wonder, that the increasing number of people living in cities creates more demands, in areas such as housing and services. The destruction of our environment and poverty are two other concerns, which city administrations have to take care of.

Megacities influence a variety of living conditions for citizens. Although traffic jams, poor air quality and increasing health risks, make life in megacities more difficult, people continue to *choose to live there*. Therefore it is essential, that more government programmes are carried out in order to help improve living conditions for the inhabitants of metropolitan areas.

However, megacities also offer great chances: they offer opportunities to look for jobs, especially for young people. According to the authority, Mexico City and São Paulo produce around 50% of the income of their countries. Bangkok contributes more than 40% to the GDP, although it is home only to 10% of the population of Thailand.

1. What are the social problems in shanty towns?

\_\_\_\_\_

2. What does the development of megacities bring to us?

\_\_\_\_\_

3. What are the effects of the overpopulation in megacities?

\_\_\_\_\_

4. Why do more people continue to move to megacities?

\_\_\_\_\_

5. What do government programmes try to do?

\_\_\_\_\_

### III. Read the text, and then answer the questions below.

Modern cities all over the world face the same problems. One of them is poor housing. People often live in old houses or huts that don't have electricity or sanitation. As city population grows, governments don't have the money to build modern apartment buildings.

Cars and industries are polluting city air and rivers more and more. Waste that people throw away is burned or ends up in landfills. All of this makes modern cities an unhealthy place to live in.

Especially during morning and evening rush hours cities become packed with vehicles. Daily traffic jams make it impossible for people to get to work in time.

City authorities are spending more and more money on public transportation and are taking other steps to reduce traffic in cities.

Cities of today face many social problems. Crime, alcoholism and drug addiction is especially high in cities. Many young people are unemployed. Government organizations work hard to get rid of poverty. They try to give such people better education and jobs.

1. Where do poor people live in cities?

---

2. Why can't governments solve the problem of poor housing?

---

3. What makes modern cities an unhealthy place to live in?

---

4. What are social problems that many cities face nowadays?

---

5. What do government organizations try to do?

---

### E. WRITING

Write a short paragraph about the population change in Ho Chi Minh City over the past 30 years, using the cues given.

1. Ho Chi Minh City/ largest city/ Viet Nam.

---

2. 1979/ only 3.4 million/ 10 years later/ only about 4 million/ because/ economy/ not/ develop much.

---

3. Renovation policy/ start/ 1989/ next decade/ dramatic increase/ population/ figure/ over 5 million.

---

4. With economic growth/ living standard/ Ho Chi Minh City/ higher/ other regions/ so/ many people/ look for/ jobs.

---

5. Ho Chi Minh City/ biggest city/ population/ over 7 million in 2009/ now about 8 million.

---

## TEST (UNIT 12)

### I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

- |                            |                     |                     |                        |
|----------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|------------------------|
| 1. A. <u>h</u> ealthcare   | B. <u>d</u> isease  | C. <u>d</u> ecrease | D. <u>s</u> ea         |
| 2. A. <u>m</u> alnutrition | B. <u>t</u> raffic  | C. <u>f</u> act     | D. <u>p</u> lace       |
| 3. A. <u>s</u> lum         | B. <u>c</u> utting  | C. <u>s</u> ugar    | D. <u>l</u> uck        |
| 4. A. <u>s</u> ocial       | B. <u>d</u> ecision | C. <u>s</u> pacious | D. <u>d</u> elicious   |
| 5. A. <u>r</u> eason       | B. <u>l</u> ist     | C. <u>d</u> ensity  | D. <u>c</u> ountryside |

### II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

- |                   |                 |                |              |
|-------------------|-----------------|----------------|--------------|
| 6. A. million     | B. density      | C. consider    | D. industry  |
| 7. A. skyscraper  | B. describe     | C. homeless    | D. violence  |
| 8. A. diverse     | B. wealthy      | C. peaceful    | D. labour    |
| 9. A. overcrowded | B. malnutrition | C. megacity    | D. education |
| 10. A. industrial | B. behaviour    | C. agriculture | D. economy   |

### III. Choose the correct answers.

11. Rio de Janeiro is a very culturally \_\_\_\_\_ city.  
 A. diverse                      B. diversity                      C. different                      D. same
12. The schoolyard is very small, so there isn't enough \_\_\_\_\_ for students to play in.  
 A. rooms                      B. land                      C. space                      D. ground
13. Diseases \_\_\_\_\_ more quickly in overcrowded areas.  
 A. move                      B. spread                      C. come                      D. travel
14. In Manila, over 30% of the population lives in \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. crops                      B. shortage                      C. poverty                      D. schooling
15. Children in the slums have more diseases than \_\_\_\_\_ in wealthy areas.  
 A. them                      B. that                      C. those                      D. Ø
16. People move to big cities for a better \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. standard of living      B. standard living      C. standard life      D. life of standard
17. When \_\_\_\_\_ people live in a small place, life can be very difficult.  
 A. a few                      B. few                      C. too much                      D. too many
18. Everyone is ready for the game, \_\_\_\_\_?  
 A. is it                      B. isn't he                      C. aren't they                      D. is there
19. Overcrowded places have a lot of problems, \_\_\_\_\_?  
 A. don't they                      B. does it                      C. doesn't it                      D. have they
20. People living in the slums never get good healthcare, \_\_\_\_\_?  
 A. do they                      B. don't they                      C. are they                      D. aren't they

**IV. Complete the sentences with the words in the box.**

<i>hunger</i>	<i>flea market</i>	<i>poverty</i>	<i>slums</i>	<i>malnutrition</i>
<i>explosion</i>	<i>overpopulation</i>	<i>density</i>	<i>living standard</i>	<i>spacious</i>

21. There are millions of people in that African country who are living in \_\_\_\_\_ because they have no jobs.
22. There has been a shortage of food for a long time because of failure of crops and people are suffering from \_\_\_\_\_.
23. \_\_\_\_\_ is one of the country's most pressing social problems.
24. She was brought up in the \_\_\_\_\_ of Dharavi.
25. The hotel rooms are \_\_\_\_\_ and comfortable.
26. In Africa many people die of \_\_\_\_\_ each year.
27. Hong Kong has a high population \_\_\_\_\_, over six thousand/ km<sup>2</sup>.
28. A \_\_\_\_\_ is an outdoor market that sells second-hand goods at low prices.
29. The government has had to take measures to stop the population \_\_\_\_\_.
30. The \_\_\_\_\_ in many developing countries is low.

**V. Fill in each blank with the correct word: *more, fewer or less*.**

31. The weather in winter is worse than that in summer. People get \_\_\_\_\_ colds in summer than in winter.
32. The new law limits smoking in public. There are \_\_\_\_\_ places where people can smoke.
33. We are lucky. We work \_\_\_\_\_ hours than any workers.
34. This factory has \_\_\_\_\_ workers than that one, so it needs more.
35. Farmers have \_\_\_\_\_ time off than workers. Farmers work harder than workers.
36. There are \_\_\_\_\_ cars in the streets at this time. The traffic is so heavy.
37. Class 7A has 42 students, and Class 7B has only 38 students. Class 7A has \_\_\_\_\_ students than Class 7B.
38. Lan has \_\_\_\_\_ homework than Hoa, so Hoa has to work harder than Lan.
39. \_\_\_\_\_ fruits are now in season in the south. There are plenty of fruits now.
40. I think we don't have many public holidays. We ought to have \_\_\_\_\_.

**VI. Put a tag question at the end of the sentences.**

41. In big cities, life can become very difficult and unpleasant, \_\_\_\_\_?
42. The world will soon become overpopulated, \_\_\_\_\_?
43. The number of English speakers is increasing very quickly, \_\_\_\_\_?
44. Jeju Island looks very peaceful, \_\_\_\_\_?
45. I think a megacity is a very large city with big population, \_\_\_\_\_?
46. You have never watched any films made in Bollywood, \_\_\_\_\_?
47. Some people commit crime when they have no money and no food, \_\_\_\_\_?
48. You enjoy living in a peaceful neighbourhood, \_\_\_\_\_?
49. The factory will bring more jobs to local people, \_\_\_\_\_?
50. You forgot to bring your textbooks this morning, \_\_\_\_\_?

**VII. Rearrange the conversation between Nam and Phuong in the correct order, and write the correct number (51-60) in each blank. The first (0) has been done for you.**

- \_\_\_\_\_ A. I see, Phuong. Is there any difference in the population density between the downtown and the suburbs?
- \_\_\_\_\_ B. Satellite towns? It sounds like being in the space, Phuong.
- \_\_\_\_\_ C. Yeah, it's Shanghai with a population of more than 24 million. It has a housing problem because of the increasing population.
- \_\_\_\_\_ D. It's true that the downtown is much more crowded than the surrounding areas. How about the elderly people in Shanghai, Phuong?
- \_\_\_\_\_ E. Yes, experts call for the development of satellite towns to attract more urban residents.
- \_\_\_\_\_ F. I think so. The government should take good care of elderly people, and develop more medical facilities for them.
- 0 G. Do you know what the biggest city in China is, Phuong?
- \_\_\_\_\_ H. Yes, there is. The population density in some central districts is more than 24,000 people per square kilometer, while the density on the outskirts of the city is very low, just one-sixth of that in central districts.
- \_\_\_\_\_ I. Do the urban planners suggest any solutions to the problem?
- \_\_\_\_\_ J. The number of residents older than 60 is increasing quickly, and it also becomes a problem to the government.
- \_\_\_\_\_ K. Oh, no, Nam. The term "satellite town" refers to urban areas located near or around larger metropolitan areas.

**VIII. Read the following passage, and then tick the correct answers: true (T), or false (F).**

The population of the world has increased more in modern times than in all other ages of history. The world's population was about 500 million in 1650. It doubled in the period from 1650 to 1850. In 1986, the population was more than three billion. Estimates based on research by the United Nations in the same year showed that it would be more than 7.5 billion by 2020.

- |  | True                     | False                    |
|--|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 61. The world's population increase in modern times has been greater than ever before. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 62. The world's population was over a billion in 1850.                                 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 63. The United Nations carried out the research in 1850.                               | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 64. The world's population in 1986 was three times as big as that in 1850.             | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 65. The world's population would be more than seven and a half billion by 2020.        | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

**IX. Read the text carefully, and then answer the questions below.**

Mumbai, which is located on the western coast of India, is the capital of Maharashtra state. It is home to Bollywood, the centre of Hindu movie industry, and the film "Slumdog Millionaire" was based there. Poor people have to live in slums. In the slum, people have to



live with many problems. People have to go to the toilets in the streets and there are open sewers. Children play among sewage wastes and doctors deal with 4,000 cases of death a day because of lack of hygiene.

Next to the open sewers are water pipes which can crack and take in sewage. Dharavi slum is based around this area. There are toxic wastes in the slum including hugely dangerous heavy metals. Dharavi is made of 12 different neighbourhoods and there are no maps or road signs. The further you walk into Dharavi from the edge, the more crowded the area becomes. People live in very small slums, often with many members of their extended families.

66. Where is Mumbai?

---

67. What is its function in Maharashtra state?

---

68. Is Mumbai famous for the film industry? Why or why not?

---

69. What is the setting for the film "Slumdog Millionaire"?

---

70. Where are the toilets in the slum?

---

71. What is the effect of open sewers?

---

72. What happens to water pipes in Dharavi?

---

73. How polluted is it in Dharavi?

---

74. How many neighbourhoods are there in Dharavi?

---

75. What happens when you go further into the slum?

---

**X. Write a short paragraph about the population of Mumbai, using the cues given.**

76. Mumbai/ one/ most populated cities/ world.

---

77. Population/ Mumbai/ over 12.7 million/ population density/ 20,482 people/ per square kilometer.

---

78. Like other big cities/ India/ population of Mumbai/ grow/ rapidly/ last 20 years.

---

79. A large majority/ Mumbai's population/ migrants/ other states/ India.

---

80. A large number/ people/ Mumbai/ live/ the slums/ other residential areas.

---

# TEST YOURSELF 4

## I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

- |    |                       |                  |                   |                     |
|----|-----------------------|------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| 1. | A. <u>flood</u>       | B. <u>wood</u>   | C. <u>book</u>    | D. <u>cook</u>      |
| 2. | A. <u>overcrowded</u> | B. <u>house</u>  | C. <u>country</u> | D. <u>town</u>      |
| 3. | A. <u>health</u>      | B. <u>heat</u>   | C. <u>meat</u>    | D. <u>seat</u>      |
| 4. | A. <u>pavement</u>    | B. <u>travel</u> | C. <u>imagine</u> | D. <u>transport</u> |
| 5. | A. <u>footprint</u>   | B. <u>shoot</u>  | C. <u>smooth</u>  | D. <u>toothache</u> |

## II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

- |     |                 |                |                  |                |
|-----|-----------------|----------------|------------------|----------------|
| 6.  | A. petrol       | B. chimney     | C. future        | D. hotel       |
| 7.  | A. overcrowded  | B. population  | C. uncomfortable | D. celebration |
| 8.  | A. eco-friendly | B. environment | C. renewable     | D. abundantly  |
| 9.  | A. underwater   | B. supersonic  | C. malnutrition  | D. intelligent |
| 10. | A. spacious     | B. comfort     | C. traffic       | D. resource    |

## III. Find which word does not belong to each group.

- |     |               |                |              |                |
|-----|---------------|----------------|--------------|----------------|
| 11. | A. cycle      | B. drive       | C. ride      | D. fly         |
| 12. | A. coal       | B. gasoline    | C. wind      | D. natural gas |
| 13. | A. plentiful  | B. short       | C. abundant  | D. unlimited   |
| 14. | A. convenient | B. comfortable | C. enjoyable | D. difficult   |
| 15. | A. save       | B. recycle     | C. conserve  | D. waste       |

## IV. Choose the correct answers.

16. Driverless cars have already \_\_\_\_\_, and they look so cool.  
A. gone                      B. travelled                      C. exist                      D. existed
17. If I have a jet pack, I will use \_\_\_\_\_ to fly anywhere easily.  
A. my                      B. mine                      C. his                      D. their
18. I think teleportation is only \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. imagine                      B. imaginary                      C. imaginable                      D. imagining
19. Do we need much \_\_\_\_\_ to park that kind of vehicles?  
A. land                      B. ground                      C. soil                      D. space
20. Do you think it will be a(n) \_\_\_\_\_, green way to travel?  
A. convenient                      B. inconvenience                      C. polluting                      D. polluted
21. I think in the future cities will be more crowded and the traffic will get \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. good                      B. well                      C. worse                      D. worst
22. Which is the best \_\_\_\_\_ of transport for the future?  
A. mean                      B. means                      C. traffic                      D. ways
23. Sidewalks are \_\_\_\_\_ to moving walkways in airports.  
A. familiar                      B. similar                      C. different                      D. same
24. We are looking for cheap, clean, \_\_\_\_\_ sources of energy.  
A. polluting                      B. harmful                      C. expensive                      D. effective

25. We should try to reduce energy \_\_\_\_\_ as much as possible.  
 A. production                      B. producers                      C. consumption                      D. consumers
26. Solar energy is \_\_\_\_\_ and it can be replaced easily.  
 A. new                                  B. renew                                  C. renewable                                  D. non-renewable
27. For many people living in rural areas, biogas is a cheap energy \_\_\_\_\_ available.  
 A. method                                  B. production                                  C. supply                                  D. consumption
28. Nuclear energy can provide enough electricity for the world's needs, but it is very \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. risk                                  B. risky                                  C. endanger                                  D. endangered
29. Alternative sources of energy are \_\_\_\_\_ and safe.  
 A. enough                                  B. not enough                                  C. short                                  D. abundant
30. Sources of energy will be used more \_\_\_\_\_ for our future.  
 A. effective                                  B. efficient                                  C. effectively                                  D. efficiently
31. A sky safety system will stop everyone \_\_\_\_\_ crashing in the sky.  
 A. at                                  B. from                                  C. through                                  D. for
32. \_\_\_\_\_ regular light bulbs with low energy light bulbs, which use less energy.  
 A. Turn                                  B. Replace                                  C. Place                                  D. Put
33. Without good insulation, the \_\_\_\_\_ in our houses goes out through the windows, the doors, etc.  
 A. ice                                  B. atmosphere                                  C. amount                                  D. heat
34. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ station will be built in the North of the country next decade.  
 A. hydropower                                  B. water                                  C. hydroelectricity                                  D. energy
35. We can \_\_\_\_\_ the problem of energy shortage by using solar energy.  
 A. carry out                                  B. get                                  C. recover                                  D. solve
36. Don't forget to \_\_\_\_\_ the lights when leaving a room or going to bed.  
 A. turn                                  B. turn on                                  C. turn off                                  D. turn out
37. What should we do to \_\_\_\_\_ our electric bills?  
 A. fall                                  B. cut down                                  C. drop                                  D. reduce
38. The use of biogas for cooking \_\_\_\_\_ in the countryside.  
 A. will increase                                  B. will be increasing  
 C. will be increased                                  D. will have increased
39. The digital camera belongs to Nick. That camera is \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. him                                  B. he                                  C. his                                  D. one
40. Is this schoolbag \_\_\_\_\_?  
 A. you                                  B. your                                  C. yours                                  D. them
41. The city is working on a project \_\_\_\_\_ the slums with clean water.  
 A. providing                                  B. provide                                  C. to provide                                  D. to providing
42. In that country, over 30% of the population live in \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. poor                                  B. poorer                                  C. poverty                                  D. the poor
43. Children who \_\_\_\_\_ malnutrition can have a lot of diseases.  
 A. suffer from                                  B. avoid                                  C. gain                                  D. obtain

44. There are more problems in the slums than in the \_\_\_\_\_ areas.  
 A. wealth                      B. richness                      C. wealthy                      D. country
45. \_\_\_\_\_ is quite popular in an overcrowded city where you can see people sleeping in a park or under a bridge.  
 A. Homeless                      B. The homeless                      C. Homelessly                      D. Homelessness

**V. Complete the sentences, using the correct possessive form of the words in brackets.**

46. This schoolbag is \_\_\_\_\_. (I)
47. These books are \_\_\_\_\_. (we)
48. Those books are \_\_\_\_\_. (they)
49. This raincoat is \_\_\_\_\_. (Nick)
50. \_\_\_\_\_ is light blue, but my hat is red. (she)
51. This is my pen, and that one is \_\_\_\_\_. (you)
52. Our flat has four rooms, and \_\_\_\_\_ has five rooms. (they)
53. This notebook is \_\_\_\_\_. (you)
54. These pencils are \_\_\_\_\_. (Ann)
55. Our car is a Chevrolet, but \_\_\_\_\_ is a Toyota. (they)

**VI. Write questions for the underlined parts.**

56. We are looking for cheap, clean, and effective sources of energy.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
57. Solar panels are used to produce energy in that area.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
58. We learn to reuse some daily products like empty bottles to save money.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
59. People from the countryside move to cities to find work and a better standard of living.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
60. People like using urban transport pods because they are very convenient and safe.  
 \_\_\_\_\_

**VII. Read the following passage, and then tick the correct answers: true (T), or false (F).**

Most of the world's energy comes from the sun. The sun's energy is in wood, oil, and other things that people use for energy.

People use many sources of energy. Ancient people used only their arms, hands and simple tools until they discovered fire. Later, people learned to use the energy of the wind to sail ships. Then they learned to use animals to do work. In the 18<sup>th</sup> and 19<sup>th</sup> centuries, people began to use machines. The first machines used steam. They burned coal to heat water. The hot water turned into steam, and the steam engine did the work. Later, people began to use the gasoline engine, and today people are using nuclear energy.

Energy is one of the basic concepts, or ideas, of physics. It is the ability to do work. Without energy we could not live. We need energy to work, and scientists are always looking for new sources of energy.

True      False

- |  |                          |                          |
|--|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 61. None of the world's energy comes from the sun.   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 62. Wind, steam, and gasoline are sources of energy. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 63. People have never used nuclear energy.           | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 64. Energy is the ability to do work.                | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 65. We need new sources of energy.                   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

**VIII. Read the text, and then answer the questions below.**

One major issue with a growing population: shortages of both food and water. Crowded cities make wastewater management more difficult. Waste pollutes clean water, making it undrinkable. Even today in some African cities, there are inadequate water supplies because most of the water is lost in pipe leakages.

Today, outdoor air pollution contributes to about two million deaths a year. Indoor air pollution, primarily from cook stoves in developing nations, kills another four million people every year, according to the World Health Organization. As cities continue to crowd, this issue will only grow, according to UN data.

It's also likely that crime and violence will increase along with urban density, the UN reports. Independent studies have found that the warming planet is likely to increase violence worldwide because of the economic pressure caused by heat and drought.

The best solution is to manage growth and to prepare for the cities of the future.

66. What is the major issue with a growing population?
- 
67. What does waste pollute?
- 
68. What is the effect of outdoor air pollution?
- 
69. What will increase along with urban density?
- 
70. Why is our planet likely to increase violence worldwide?
- 

**IX. Read the following passage, and then tick the correct answers: true (T), or false (F).**

Electricity is the most common form of energy today. In the modern world, electricity is very available at the touch of a switch. Electricity has many uses. The most common use of electricity is to provide artificial lighting. In factories, electricity is used to light up the factories. It is also used to operate air-conditioners, computers, and many other machines. Electricity is also used to power the many appliances that we have in our homes. Such appliances include television sets, computers, electric fans, irons, and many others. The list is simply endless. Modern man will most probably be lost without electricity.

	True	False
71. The passage is about a kind of energy.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
72. Electricity has a lot of uses.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
73. Without electricity, our life will not be affected.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
74. Electricity is only useful at the workplace.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
75. There are many appliances depended on electricity.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

**X. Read the text carefully, and then answer the questions below.**

### ***Driverless cars***

Motorists will be able to read a book, surf the Internet or talk to other drivers without looking at the road by 2030. Britain would become a world leader in driverless cars, with the first tests on Britain's roads by the summer.

The development of fully automated cars will mean that motorists no longer need licenses. It will be good news because 31 per cent of women and 14 per cent of men do not hold driving licenses.

The government warns that driverless cars will be the target of hackers because of the high level of computer technology on board. The government will ask manufacturers to ensure all vehicles have "fail safe" systems in case they are hacked.

There are likely to be two levels of driverless cars as the technology develops. The first, known as "highly automated", will require drivers who hold licenses to take control of the wheel if there are any issues.

The second, known as "fully-automated" cars, will require no involvement from drivers and will be capable of communicating with other vehicles, traffic lights and road signs.

76. With driverless cars, what will motorists be able to do while travelling on the street?

---

77. Will motorists need driving licenses any more?

---

78. What is one of the problems for driverless cars?

---

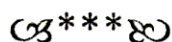
79. What are two levels of driverless cars?

---

80. What are the advantages of "fully-automated" cars?

---

# MỤC LỤC



Lời nói đầu.....	3
Unit 1. MY HOBBIES.....	5
Unit 2. HEALTH.....	16
Unit 3. COMMUNITY SERVICE.....	26
Test Yourself 1.....	38
Unit 4. MUSIC AND ARTS.....	42
Unit 5. VIETNAMESE FOOD AND DRINK.....	53
Unit 6. THE FIRST UNIVERSITY IN VIET NAM.....	64
Test Yourself 2.....	76
Unit 7. TRAFFIC.....	81
Unit 8. FILMS.....	95
Unit 9. FESTIVALS AROUND THE WORLD.....	106
Test Yourself 3.....	118
Unit 10. SOURCES OF ENERGY.....	123
Unit 11. TRAVELLING IN THE FUTURE.....	132
Unit 12. AN OVERCROWDED WORLD.....	144
Test Yourself 4.....	154

**NHÀ XUẤT BẢN ĐẠI HỌC SƯ PHẠM TP. HỒ CHÍ MINH**  
280 An Dương Vương, Phường 4, Quận 5, TP. Hồ Chí Minh  
Điện thoại: (08) 38301303 - Fax: (08) 39381382  
Email: nxb@hcmup.edu.vn  
Website: http://nxb.hcmup.edu.vn

**BÀI TẬP TIẾNG ANH 7 (Không đáp án)**  
**LƯU HOÀNG TRÍ**

*Chịu trách nhiệm xuất bản:*

**Giám đốc**

**ThS. LÊ THANH HÀ**

*Chịu trách nhiệm nội dung:*

**Tổng biên tập**

**PGS. TS. NGUYỄN KIM HỒNG**

*Biên tập:*

**NGUYỄN THỊ BÍCH LIÊN**

*Trình bày bìa:*

**VÕ THỊ THỪA**

*Sửa bản in:*

**THÁI HỌC**

Mã số sách tiêu chuẩn quốc tế - ISBN: 978-604-918-617-2

*Liên kết xuất bản: Nhà sách Hồng Ân*

20C Nguyễn Thị Minh Khai, Phường Đakao, Quận 1, TP. HCM

---

In 2.000 cuốn, khổ 19 × 27cm, tại Công ty Cổ phần Văn hoá Văn Lang.  
Địa chỉ: Số 6 Nguyễn Trung Trực, Phường 5, Quận Bình Thạnh, TP. Hồ Chí Minh.  
Số xác nhận đăng ký xuất bản: 757-2015/CXBIPH/02-40/ĐHSPTPHCM ngày 06/4/2015.  
Quyết định xuất bản số: 81/QĐ-NXBĐHSP, ngày 27/4/2015.  
In xong và nộp lưu chiểu quý II năm 2015.





Nhà sách **HỒNG AN**  
www.nhasachhongan.com.vn  
Email: nhasachhongan@hotmail.com  
20C Nguyễn Thị Minh Khai - Q.1 - TP.HCM  
ĐT: 38246706 - 39107371 - 39107095 ♦ Fax: 39107053  
Diễn đàn của tri thức

Quý khách ở xa liên hệ: [www.hongantructuyen.vn](http://www.hongantructuyen.vn) để chúng tôi được phục vụ.

### BỘ SÁCH THAM KHẢO TIẾNG ANH:

#### 1. Học tốt Tiếng Anh 6

Lê Nguyễn Thanh Tâm - Phạm Hoàng Ngân - Phạm Thị Mỹ Trang

#### 2. Bài giảng và lời giải chi tiết Tiếng Anh 6 - tập 1

Lê Nguyễn Thanh Tâm - Phạm Hoàng Ngân - Phạm Thị Mỹ Trang

#### 3. Bài giảng và lời giải chi tiết Tiếng Anh 6 - tập 2

Lê Nguyễn Thanh Tâm - Phạm Hoàng Ngân - Phạm Thị Mỹ Trang

#### 4. Giải sách bài tập Tiếng Anh 6

Lê Nguyễn Thanh Tâm - Phạm Hoàng Ngân - Phạm Thị Mỹ Trang

#### 5. Bài tập Tiếng Anh 6 (Không đáp án)

Lưu Hoàng Trí

#### 6. Học tốt Tiếng Anh 7

Lê Nguyễn Thanh Tâm - Phạm Hoàng Ngân - Phạm Thị Mỹ Trang

#### 7. Bài giảng và lời giải chi tiết Tiếng Anh 7 - tập 1

Lê Nguyễn Thanh Tâm - Phạm Hoàng Ngân - Phạm Thị Mỹ Trang

#### 8. Bài giảng và lời giải chi tiết Tiếng Anh 7 - tập 2

Lê Nguyễn Thanh Tâm - Phạm Hoàng Ngân - Phạm Thị Mỹ Trang

#### 9. Giải sách bài tập Tiếng Anh 7

Lê Nguyễn Thanh Tâm - Phạm Hoàng Ngân - Phạm Thị Mỹ Trang

#### 10. Bài tập Tiếng Anh 7 (Không đáp án)

Lưu Hoàng Trí

### Bán tại

- 245 Trần Nguyễn Hân - HP \* ĐT: 3858699
- 29&31 Phan Bội Châu - Hải Phòng \*ĐT: 3839599
- 04 Lý Thái Tổ - TP. Đà Nẵng \*ĐT: 3823421
- 259 Lê Duẩn - TP. Vinh - ĐT: 3554777
- 39-41 Võ Thị Sáu - Cần Thơ \* ĐT: 3818891
- 158 Tỉnh lộ 8 - TT.Củ Chi - TP.HCM \*ĐT: 37924216
- 15 Lê Thái Tổ - Vĩnh Long - ĐT: 0907845219
- 76 Hàn Thuyên - TP. Huế
- 78 Bạch Đằng - Đà Nẵng - ĐT: 3834328
- NS Nhã Trang - Cam Ranh \* ĐT: 3854496
- 19 Trường Chinh - Buôn Ma Thuột \*ĐT: 3953408
- 278 Lê Hồng Phong - Quy Nhơn - ĐT: 3823453
- 67 Nguyễn Khoái - Hà Nội \* ĐT: (04) 39845439



Giá: 64.000đ